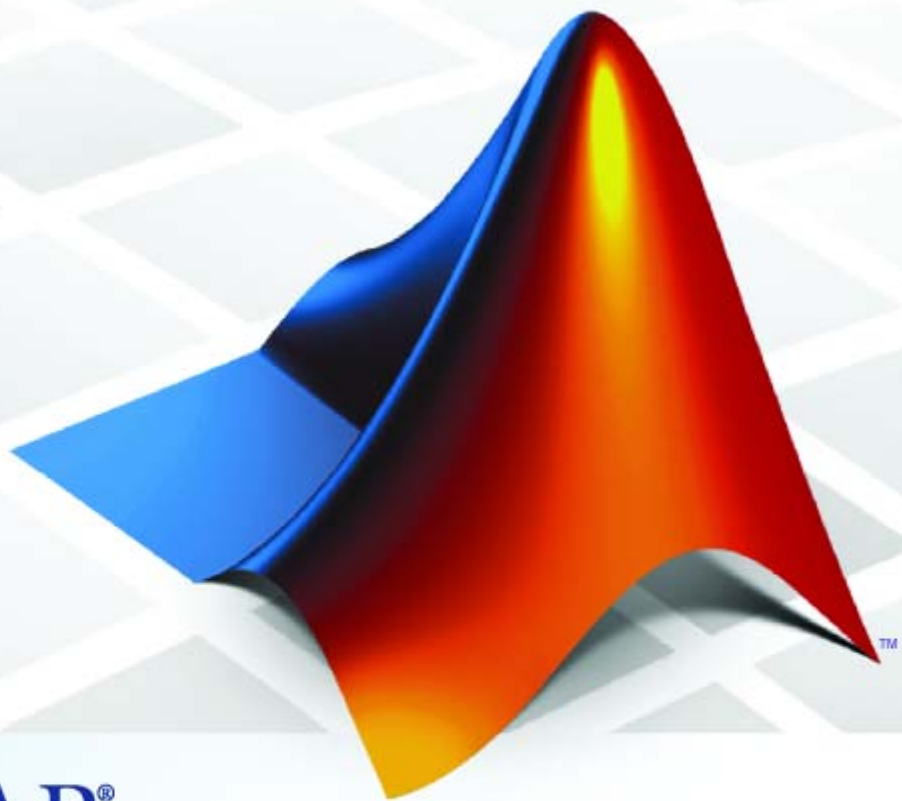


# MATLAB® Builder™ NE 3

## User's Guide



MATLAB®

## How to Contact The MathWorks



[www.mathworks.com](http://www.mathworks.com) Web  
[comp.soft-sys.matlab](mailto:comp.soft-sys.matlab) Newsgroup  
[www.mathworks.com/contact\\_TS.html](http://www.mathworks.com/contact_TS.html) Technical Support



[suggest@mathworks.com](mailto:suggest@mathworks.com) Product enhancement suggestions  
[bugs@mathworks.com](mailto:bugs@mathworks.com) Bug reports  
[doc@mathworks.com](mailto:doc@mathworks.com) Documentation error reports  
[service@mathworks.com](mailto:service@mathworks.com) Order status, license renewals, passcodes  
[info@mathworks.com](mailto:info@mathworks.com) Sales, pricing, and general information



508-647-7000 (Phone)



508-647-7001 (Fax)



The MathWorks, Inc.  
3 Apple Hill Drive  
Natick, MA 01760-2098

For contact information about worldwide offices, see the MathWorks Web site.

*MATLAB® Builder™ NE User's Guide*

© COPYRIGHT 2002–2010 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

### Trademarks

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See [www.mathworks.com/trademarks](http://www.mathworks.com/trademarks) for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

### Patents

The MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see [www.mathworks.com/patents](http://www.mathworks.com/patents) for more information.

**Revision History**

March 2006	Online only	New for Version 2.0 (Release 2006a)
September 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 2.1 (Release 2006b)
March 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 2.2 (Release 2007a)
September 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 2.2.1 (Release 2007b)
March 2008	Online only	Revised for Version 2.2.2 (Release 2008a)
October 2008	Online only	Revised for Version 3.0 (Release 2008b)
March 2009	Online only	Revised for Version 3.0.1 (Release 2009a)
September 2009	Online only	Revised for Version 3.0.2 (Release 2009b)
March 2010	Online only	Revised for Version 3.1 (Release 2010a)



## Getting Started

### 1

<b>Product Overview</b> .....	1-2
MATLAB® Compiler Extension .....	1-2
Common Language Specification (CLS) Compliancy .....	1-2
Data Conversion, Indexing, and Array Formatting .....	1-3
Error Handling .....	1-3
Remotable Components .....	1-3
COM Components .....	1-3
Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions .....	1-4
Limitations of Support .....	1-4
<b>Before You Use MATLAB® Builder NE</b> .....	1-5
Your Role in the .NET Application Deployment Process ..	1-5
What You Need to Know .....	1-7
Install Required Products .....	1-8
<b>Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square</b>	
<b>Example</b> .....	1-9
About This Example .....	1-9
Magic Square Example: MATLAB Programmer Tasks ...	1-10
Using the Command Line to Create .NET Components ...	1-17
Magic Square Example: .NET Programmer Tasks .....	1-23
<b>Next Steps</b> .....	1-34

## Writing Deployable MATLAB Code

### 2

<b>The MATLAB Application Deployment Products</b> .....	2-2
---	-----

<b>Building Your Application with the Application Deployment Products and the Deployment Tool</b> . . . .	2-4
What Is the Difference Between the Deployment Tool and the mcc Command Line? . . . . .	2-4
How Does MATLAB® Compiler Software Build My Application? . . . . .	2-4
What You Should Know About the Dependency Analysis Function (depfun) . . . . .	2-5
Compiling MEX-Files, DLLs, or Shared Libraries . . . . .	2-6
The Role of the Component Technology File (CTF Archive) . . . . .	2-7
 <b>Guidelines for Writing Deployable MATLAB Code</b> . . . .	2-10
Compiled Applications Do Not Process MATLAB Files at Runtime . . . . .	2-10
Do Not Rely on Changing Directory or Path to Control the Execution of MATLAB Files . . . . .	2-11
Use ismcc and isdeployed Functions To Execute Deployment-Specific Code Paths . . . . .	2-11
Gradually Refactor Applications That Depend on Noncompilable Functions . . . . .	2-12
Do Not Create or Use Nonconstant Static State Variables . . . . .	2-12
 <b>Working with MATLAB Data Files Using Load and Save</b> . . . . .	2-14
Using Load/Save Functions to Process MATLAB Data for Deployed Applications . . . . .	2-14

## Using Components Created by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product

### 3

<b>Installing the Components on the Development Machine</b> . . . . .	3-2
 <b>Specifying Component Assembly and Namespace</b> . . . . .	3-3
 <b>Creating an Instance of a Class</b> . . . . .	3-4

<b>Using Dispose to Explicitly Free Resources</b> .....	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Improving Data Access Using the MCR User Data</b>	
<b>Interface and MATLAB® Builder NE</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>
Code Snippets .....	<b>3-6</b>
Example .....	<b>3-7</b>
<b>Dynamically Specifying Run-Time Options to the</b>	
<b>MCR</b> .....	<b>3-11</b>
What Run-Time Options Can You Specify? .....	<b>3-11</b>
Getting MCR Option Values Using MWMCR .....	<b>3-11</b>
<b>Accessing Real or Imaginary Components Within</b>	
<b>Complex Arrays</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
Extracting Real or Imaginary Components .....	<b>3-14</b>
Returning Values with Component Indexing .....	<b>3-14</b>
Assigning Values with Component Indexing .....	<b>3-15</b>
Converting MATLAB Arrays to .NET Arrays Using	
Component Indexing .....	<b>3-15</b>
<b>Blocking Execution of a Console Application that</b>	
<b>Creates Figures</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>
WaitForFiguresToDie Method .....	<b>3-17</b>
Code Fragment: Using WaitForFiguresToDie to Block	
Execution .....	<b>3-18</b>
<b>Using MATLAB API Functions in a C# Program</b> .....	<b>3-20</b>
Overview .....	<b>3-20</b>
Example: Using functions engOpen and engEvalString	
from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program .....	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Handling Errors</b> .....	<b>3-22</b>
<b>Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for</b>	
<b>Components Using the MCR Component Cache</b> ....	<b>3-24</b>
<b>Using Enhanced XML Documentation Files</b> .....	<b>3-26</b>

## Sample Applications (C#)

### 4

<b>Simple Plot Example</b> .....	4-2
Purpose .....	4-2
Procedure .....	4-2
<b>Passing Variable Arguments</b> .....	4-7
<b>Spectral Analysis Example</b> .....	4-13
Purpose .....	4-13
Procedure .....	4-15
<b>Matrix Math Example</b> .....	4-20
Purpose .....	4-20
Procedure .....	4-21
MATLAB Functions to Be Encapsulated .....	4-26
Understanding the MatrixMath Program .....	4-27
<b>Phonebook Example</b> .....	4-28
Purpose .....	4-28
Procedure .....	4-28

## Sample Applications (Microsoft® Visual Basic .NET)

### 5

<b>Magic Square Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	5-3
<b>Create Plot Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	5-7
<b>Variable Arguments Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	5-11
<b>Spectral Analysis Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	5-15



<b>Matrix Math Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	<b>5-20</b>
<b>Phonebook Example (Visual Basic)</b> .....	<b>5-25</b>
makephone Function .....	<b>5-25</b>
Procedure .....	<b>5-25</b>

## Deploying a MATLAB Figure Over the Web Using WebFigures

# 6

<b>About the WebFigures Feature</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
Supported Renderers for WebFigures .....	<b>6-2</b>
<b>Before You Use WebFigures</b> .....	<b>6-3</b>
Your Role in the .NET WebFigure Deployment Process ...	<b>6-3</b>
What You Need to Know to Implement WebFigures .....	<b>6-5</b>
Required Products .....	<b>6-5</b>
Assumptions About the Examples .....	<b>6-6</b>
<b>Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure</b> .....	<b>6-7</b>
Overview .....	<b>6-7</b>
Procedure .....	<b>6-7</b>
<b>Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure</b> .....	<b>6-15</b>
Overview .....	<b>6-15</b>
Manually Installing WebFigureService .....	<b>6-17</b>
Retrieving Multiple WebFigures From a Component .....	<b>6-18</b>
Attaching a WebFigure .....	<b>6-21</b>
Setting Up WebFigureControl for Remote Invocation ...	<b>6-23</b>
Getting an Embeddable String That References a WebFigure Attached to a WebFigureService .....	<b>6-25</b>
Improving Processing Times for JavaScript Using Minification .....	<b>6-27</b>
Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up .....	<b>6-28</b>
<b>Upgrading Your WebFigures</b> .....	<b>6-30</b>

<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>6-31</b>
<b>Logging Levels</b> .....	<b>6-33</b>

## Working with MATLAB Figures and Images

# 7

<b>Your Role in Working with Figures and Images</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
<b>Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure</b> .....	<b>7-3</b>
Preparing a MATLAB Figure for Export .....	7-3
Changing the Figure (Optional) .....	7-3
Exporting the Figure .....	7-4
Cleaning Up the Figure Window .....	7-4
Example: Modifying and Exporting Figure Data .....	7-4
<b>Working with MATLAB Figure and Image Data</b> .....	<b>7-6</b>
For More Comprehensive Examples .....	7-6
Working with Figures .....	7-6
Working with Images .....	7-6

## Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting

# 8

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
What Are Remotable Components? .....	8-2
Benefits of Using .NET Remoting .....	8-2
<b>Your Role in Building Distributed Applications</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
<b>Selecting the Best Method of Accessing Your Component: MWArray API or Native .NET API</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
Using Native .NET Structure and Cell Arrays .....	8-6

<b>Creating a Remotable .NET Component</b> .....	8-7
Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool .....	8-7
Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command .....	8-10
Files Generated by the Compilation Process .....	8-10
<b>Enabling Access to a Remotable .NET Component</b> ....	8-12
Using the MWArray API .....	8-12
Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example ..	8-19
Using the Native .NET API: The Cell and Struct Example .....	8-26

## Troubleshooting

# 9

<b>Troubleshooting the Build Process</b> .....	9-2
Viewing the Latest Build Log .....	9-2
Generating Verbose Output .....	9-2
<b>Failure to Find a Required File</b> .....	9-3
<b>Diagnostic Messages</b> .....	9-4
Enhanced Error Diagnostics Using mstack Trace .....	9-6

## Reference Information

# 10

<b>Requirements for the MATLAB® Builder NE Product</b> ..	10-2
System Requirements .....	10-2
Compiler Requirements .....	10-2
Path Modifications Required for Accessibility .....	10-3
Limitations and Restrictions .....	10-3
<b>Data Conversion Rules</b> .....	10-4

Managed Types to MATLAB Arrays .....	10-4
MATLAB Arrays to Managed Types .....	10-5
Character and String Conversion .....	10-5
Unsupported MATLAB Array Types .....	10-6
<b>Overview of Data Conversion Classes .....</b>	<b>10-7</b>
Overview .....	10-7
Returning Data from MATLAB to Managed Code .....	10-8
Example of MWNumericArray in a .NET Application ....	10-8
Interfaces Generated by the MATLAB® Builder NE	
Product .....	10-8
<b>MWArray Class Specification .....</b>	<b>10-14</b>

## Function Reference

# 11

## Creating and Installing COM Components

# 12

<b>Building a Deployable COM Component .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
<b>Packaging a Deployable COM Component .....</b>	<b>12-4</b>
<b>About Embedded CTF Archives .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
<b>Using the Command-Line Interface .....</b>	<b>12-6</b>
<b>Installing COM Components on a Target Computer ...</b>	<b>12-9</b>

# Programming with COM Components Created by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product

## 13

<b>General Techniques</b> .....	13-2
<b>Registering and Referencing the Utility Library</b> .....	13-4
<b>Creating an Instance of a Class in Microsoft® Visual</b>	
<b>Basic</b> .....	13-5
Advantages and Disadvantages .....	13-5
CreateObject Function .....	13-5
Microsoft® Visual Basic New Operator .....	13-6
Advantages of Each Technique .....	13-7
Declaring a Reusable Class Instance .....	13-7
<b>Calling the Methods of a Class Instance</b> .....	13-8
Standard Mapping Technique .....	13-8
Variant .....	13-9
Examples of Passing Input and Output Parameters .....	13-9
<b>Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program</b> .....	13-11
Using the MATLAB® Builder NE Product to Create the	
Object .....	13-11
Using the Component in a Visual C++ Program .....	13-12
<b>Using a COM Component in a .NET Application</b> .....	13-14
Overview .....	13-14
C# Implementation .....	13-14
Microsoft® Visual Basic Implementation .....	13-17
<b>Adding Events to COM Objects</b> .....	13-21
MATLAB Language Pragma .....	13-21
Using a Callback with a Microsoft® Visual Basic Event ...	13-22
<b>Passing Arguments</b> .....	13-26
Overview .....	13-26
Creating and Using a varargin Array in Microsoft® Visual	
Basic Programs .....	13-26

Creating and Using varargout in Microsoft® Visual Basic Programs .....	13-27
Passing an Empty varargin From Microsoft® Visual Basic Code .....	13-28

**Using Flags to Control Array Formatting and Data**

<b>Conversion</b> .....	13-29
Overview .....	13-29
Array Formatting Flags .....	13-30
Using Array Formatting Flags .....	13-30
Using Data Conversion Flags .....	13-33
Special Flags for Some Microsoft® Visual Basic Types ....	13-35

**Using MATLAB Global Variables in Microsoft® Visual Basic** .....

13-36

**Blocking Execution of a Console Application that**

<b>Creates Figures</b> .....	13-39
MCRWaitForFigures .....	13-39
Using MCRWaitForFigures to Block Execution .....	13-40

**Obtaining Registry Information** .....

13-42

**Handling Errors During a Method Call** .....

13-44

**Using COM Components in Microsoft® Visual Basic Applications**

**14**

<b>Magic Square Example</b> .....	14-2
Example Overview .....	14-2
Creating the MATLAB File .....	14-2
Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Project .....	14-3
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Project .....	14-4
Creating the User Interface .....	14-4
Creating the Executable in Microsoft® Visual Basic .....	14-7
Testing the Application .....	14-7

Packaging the Component .....	14-8
<b>Creating an Excel Add-In: Spectral Analysis</b>	
<b>Example</b> .....	14-9
Example Overview .....	14-9
Building the Component .....	14-9
Integrating the Component with VBA .....	14-11
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form .....	14-13
Adding the Spectral Analysis Menu Item to Microsoft® Excel .....	14-18
Saving the Add-In .....	14-19
Testing the Add-in .....	14-20
Packaging and Distributing the Add-In .....	14-22
<b>Univariate Interpolation Example</b> .....	14-24
Example Overview .....	14-24
Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Component .....	14-24
Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic .....	14-25
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form .....	14-26
<b>Matrix Calculator Example</b> .....	14-32
Example Overview .....	14-32
Building the Component .....	14-32
Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic .....	14-33
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form .....	14-34
<b>Curve Fitting Example</b> .....	14-43
Example Overview .....	14-43
Building the Component .....	14-43
Building the Project .....	14-44
Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic .....	14-44
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form .....	14-45
<b>Bouncing Ball Simulation Example</b> .....	14-51
Example Overview .....	14-51
Building the Component .....	14-51
Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic .....	14-52
Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form .....	14-53

## How the MATLAB® Builder NE Product Creates COM Components

### 15

<b>Overview of Internal Processes</b> .....	15-2
How Is a MATLAB® Builder NE Component Created? ...	15-2
Code Generation .....	15-2
Create Interface Definitions .....	15-3
C++ Compilation .....	15-3
Linking and Resource Binding .....	15-3
Registration of the DLL .....	15-3
<b>Component Registration</b> .....	15-4
Self-Registering Components .....	15-4
Globally Unique Identifier .....	15-5
Versioning .....	15-7
<b>Data Conversion</b> .....	15-9
Conversion Rules .....	15-9
Array Formatting Flags .....	15-19
Data Conversion Flags .....	15-21
<b>Calling Conventions</b> .....	15-23
Producing a COM Class .....	15-23
IDL Mapping .....	15-24
Microsoft® Visual Basic Mapping .....	15-25

## Utility Library for Microsoft COM Components

### 16

<b>Referencing Utility Classes</b> .....	16-2
<b>Utility Library Classes</b> .....	16-3
Class MWUtil .....	16-3
Class MWFlags .....	16-10
Class MWStruct .....	16-16
Class MWField .....	16-23



Class MWComplex .....	16-24
Class MWSparse .....	16-26
Class MWArg .....	16-29
<b>Enumerations .....</b>	<b>16-31</b>
Enum mwArrayFormat .....	16-31
Enum mwDataType .....	16-31
Enum mwDateFormat .....	16-32

## Examples

# A

---

Magic Square Example for .NET .....	A-2
Using Load and Save .....	A-2
Using the MCR Data Interface .....	A-2
Passing MCR Option Values from a C# Application ...	A-2
Using WaitForFiguresToDie to Block Execution .....	A-2
Using functions engOpen and engEvalString from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program .....	A-2
Sample Applications (C#) .....	A-3
Sample Applications (Visual Basic .NET) .....	A-3
Quick Start to Implementing a WebFigure .....	A-3
Working with Functions that Return a Single WebFigure as the Function's Only Output .....	A-3

<b>Working With Functions That Return Multiple WebFigures In an Array as the Output</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Attaching a WebFigure</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Referencing a WebFigure Attached to the Local Server</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Referencing a WebFigure Attached to a Remote Server</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure</b> .....	<b>A-4</b>
<b>Working with MATLAB Figures</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Working with Images</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Using Native .NET Structure and Cell Arrays</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>COM Components</b> .....	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Utility Library Classes for COM Components</b> .....	<b>A-6</b>

**Glossary**

---

**Index**

---



# Getting Started

---

- “Product Overview” on page 1-2
- “Before You Use MATLAB® Builder NE” on page 1-5
- “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9
- “Next Steps” on page 1-34

## Product Overview

In this section...
“MATLAB® Compiler Extension” on page 1-2
“Common Language Specification (CLS) Compliancy” on page 1-2
“Data Conversion, Indexing, and Array Formatting” on page 1-3
“Error Handling” on page 1-3
“Remotable Components” on page 1-3
“COM Components” on page 1-3
“Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4
“Limitations of Support” on page 1-4

### **MATLAB Compiler Extension**

MATLAB® Builder™ NE is an extension to MATLAB® Compiler™. The builder converts MATLAB® functions to .NET methods that encapsulate MATLAB code written by the MATLAB programmer. All MATLAB code to be compiled must be in the form of a function. Each MATLAB Builder NE component contains one or more classes, each providing an interface to the MATLAB functions in the MATLAB code.

When you package and distribute the application to your users, you include supporting files generated by the builder as well as the MATLAB Compiler Runtime (MCR). For more information about the MCR, see “What Is The MATLAB Compiler Runtime (MCR)?” in the MATLAB Compiler documentation.

For more information about how this product works with MATLAB Compiler, see “Writing Deployable MATLAB Code”.

### **Common Language Specification (CLS) Compliancy**

CLS is an acronym for *Common Language Specification*. CLS is a subset of language features supported by the *.NET common language runtime (CLR)*. MATLAB Builder NE classes are CLS compliant—they are guaranteed to integrate seamlessly with all .NET programming languages. CLS-compliant

languages are guaranteed to interoperate with other CLS-compliant components and tools.

Use the builder to package MATLAB functions so that .NET programmers can access them from any *CLS-compliant language*.

## Data Conversion, Indexing, and Array Formatting

The builder provides robust data conversion, indexing, and array formatting capabilities. For example, to support MATLAB data types, the MATLAB Builder NE product provides the `MWArray` data conversion classes in the MATLAB Builder NE `MWArray` assembly. You reference this assembly in your managed application to convert native arrays to MATLAB arrays and vice versa.

## Error Handling

The builder also provides custom error handling so that errors originating from MATLAB functions are reported as standard managed exceptions. The error description contains specific references to the MATLAB code, thus simplifying the debugging process.

## Remotable Components

Remotable .NET components allow you to access MATLAB functionality remotely, as part of a distributed system consisting of multiple applications, domains, browsers, or machines. They also enable your component to be deployed in other capacities, such as a Windows® service, for example.

For detailed instructions about creating remotable .NET components, see Chapter 8, “Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting”.

## COM Components

You can also use the builder to create COM components. COM stands for *Component Object Model*, which is a software architecture developed by Microsoft® to build component-based applications. COM objects expose interfaces that allow applications and other components to access the features of the objects. COM objects are accessible through Microsoft® Visual Basic®,

C++, or any language that supports COM objects. For more information about creating and accessing COM components, see Chapter 12, “Creating and Installing COM Components” and Chapter 13, “Programming with COM Components Created by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product”.

## **Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions**

As of this release, versions 2.0, 3.0, and 3.5 of the Microsoft .NET Framework are supported.

All of these supported releases are based on the CLS 2.0 specification.

Specifying 0.0 as the .NET Framework indicates to supply the latest version of the Framework installed on your system.

## **Limitations of Support**

MATLAB Builder NE provides a wide variety of support for various CLS-compliant types and objects. However, MATLAB (MCOS) objects are not supported as inputs or outputs for compiled or deployed functions.



## Before You Use MATLAB Builder NE

In this section...
“Your Role in the .NET Application Deployment Process” on page 1-5
“What You Need to Know” on page 1-7
“Install Required Products” on page 1-8

### Your Role in the .NET Application Deployment Process

Depending on the size of your organization, you may play one or more roles in the process of successfully deploying a .NET application. For example, your role may be to:

- Analyze user requirements and satisfy them by writing a program in MATLAB code.
- Implement the infrastructure needed to successfully deploy a .NET application to the Web.
- Create a remotable component that can be shared across distributed systems.
- Perform tasks associated with numerous roles (particularly in a smaller organization).

The table Application Deployment Roles, Goals, and Tasks on page 1-6 describes some of the different roles, or jobs, that MATLAB Builder NE users typically perform and which tasks they would most likely perform when running the examples in this documentation.

**Application Deployment Roles, Goals, and Tasks**

Role	Goals	Task To Achieve Goal
MATLAB programmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understand the end-user business requirements and the mathematical models needed to support them.</li> <li>• Build an executable component with MATLAB tools (usually with support from a .NET programmer).</li> <li>• Package the component for distribution to end users.</li> <li>• Pass the packaged component to the .NET programmer for rollout and further integration into the end-user environment.</li> </ul>	See “Magic Square Example: MATLAB Programmer Tasks” on page 1-10.
.NET programmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Write .NET code to execute the .NET assembly built by the MATLAB programmer.</li> <li>• Roll out the packaged component and integrate it into the end user’s environment.</li> </ul>	See “Magic Square Example: .NET Programmer Tasks” on page 1-23.

## Application Deployment Roles, Goals, and Tasks (Continued)

Role	Goals	Task To Achieve Goal
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the component in enterprise .NET applications, adding and modifying code as needed.</li> <li>• Address data conversion issues that may be encountered, according to the end user's specifications.</li> <li>• Ensure the final .NET application executes reliably in the end user's environment.</li> </ul>	
External user	Execute the solution created by MATLAB and .NET programmers.	Run the deployed application (outside the scope of this document).

## What You Need to Know

To use the MATLAB Builder NE product, specific requirements exist for each user role.

<b>Role</b>	<b>Requirements</b>
MATLAB programmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A basic knowledge of MATLAB, and how to work with:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ MATLAB data types</li><li>▪ MATLAB structures</li></ul></li></ul>
.NET programmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Exposure to:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ A CLS-compliant programming language</li><li>▪ .NET Framework</li></ul></li><li>• Knowledge of object-oriented programming concepts</li></ul>

## **Install Required Products**

Install the following products to run the example described in this chapter:

- MATLAB
- MATLAB Compiler
- MATLAB Builder NE
- A supported C or C++ compiler

For more information about product installation and requirements, see “Installation and Configuration”.

## Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example

### In this section...

“About This Example” on page 1-9

“Magic Square Example: MATLAB Programmer Tasks” on page 1-10

“Using the Command Line to Create .NET Components” on page 1-17

“Magic Square Example: .NET Programmer Tasks” on page 1-23

### About This Example

This example shows you how to transform a simple MATLAB code function into a deployable MATLAB Builder NE component.

The Magic Square example shows you how to create a .NET component named `MagicSquareComp`, which contains the `magicSquareClass` class and other files needed to deploy your application.

The `magicSquareClass` wraps a MATLAB function, `makesquare`, which computes a magic square. A magic square is a matrix containing any number of rows. These rows, added horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, equate to the same value. MATLAB contains a function, `magic`, that you can use to create magic squares of any dimension.

---

**Note** The examples here use the Windows `deploytool` GUI, a graphical front-end interface to MATLAB Compiler software. For information about how to perform these tasks using the command-line interface to MATLAB Compiler software, see the `mcc` reference page.

---

---

**Note** If you wish to create a *remotable component*, and for information about what this entails, see Chapter 8, “Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting”.

---

## Magic Square Example: MATLAB Programmer Tasks

The MATLAB programmer usually performs the following tasks.

### Key Tasks for the MATLAB Programmer

Task	Reference
1. Prepare to run the example by copying the MATLAB example files into a work folder.	“Copying the Example Files” on page 1-10
2. Test the MATLAB code to ensure it is suitable for deployment.	“Testing the MATLAB File You Want to Deploy” on page 1-11
3. Create a .NET component (encapsulating your MATLAB code in a .NET class) by running the <b>Build</b> function in <code>deploytool</code> .	“Building Your Component” on page 1-12
4. Prepare to run the Packaging Tool by determining what additional files to include with the deployed component.	“Packaging Your Component (Optional)” on page 1-16
5. Copy the output.	“Copying the Package You Created” on page 1-17

---

**Note** The MATLAB Builder NE examples are in `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET`. This example assumes the work folder is on drive D:.

---

### Copying the Example Files

Prepare to run the example by copying needed files into your work area as follows:

- 1 Navigate to  
`matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\MagicSquareExample`.

---

**Tip** *matlabroot* is the MATLAB root folder (where MATLAB is installed). To find the value of this variable on your system, type *matlabroot* at a MATLAB command prompt.

---

- 2 Copy the MagicSquareExample folder to a work area, for example, D:\dotnetbuilder\_examples. Avoid using spaces in your folder names, if possible. The example files should now reside in D:\dotnetbuilder\_examples\MagicSquareExample.
- 3 Using a command prompt, navigate to D:\dotnetbuilder\_examples\MagicSquareExample by switching to the D: drive and entering `cd \dotnetbuilder_examples\MagicSquareExample`.

### Testing the MATLAB File You Want to Deploy

In this example, you test a precreated MATLAB file (`magicsquare.m`) containing the predefined MATLAB function `magic`, in order to have a baseline to compare to the results of the function when it is finally wrapped as a deployable .NET component.

- 1 Using MATLAB, locate the `magicsquare.m` file at D:\dotnetbuilder\_examples\MagicSquareExample\MagicSquareComp. The contents of the file are as follows:

```
function y = makesquare(x)
%MAKESQUARE Magic square of size x.
%   Y = MAKESQUARE(X) returns a magic square of size x.
%   This file is used as an example for the MATLAB
%   Builder NE product.

%   Copyright 2001-2009 The MathWorks, Inc.

y = magic(x);
```

- 2 At the MATLAB command prompt, enter `makesquare(5)` and view the results. The output should appear as follows:

```
17 24  1  8 15
23  5  7 14 16
```

```
4 6 13 20 22
10 12 19 21 3
11 18 25 2 9
```

**About MATLAB Function Signatures.** MATLAB supports multiple signatures for function calls.

The generic MATLAB function has the following structure:

```
function [Out1,Out2,...,varargout]=foo(In1,In2,...,varargin)
```

To the *left* of the equal sign, the function specifies a set of explicit and optional return arguments.

To the *right* of the equal sign, the function lists explicit *input* arguments followed by one or more optional arguments.

All arguments represent a specific MATLAB type.

When the MATLAB Builder NE product processes your MATLAB code, it creates several overloaded methods that implement the MATLAB functions. Each of these overloaded methods corresponds to a call to the generic MATLAB function with a specific number of input arguments. In addition to these methods, the builder creates another method that defines the return values of the MATLAB function as an input argument. This method simulates the `feval` external API interface in MATLAB.

## Building Your Component

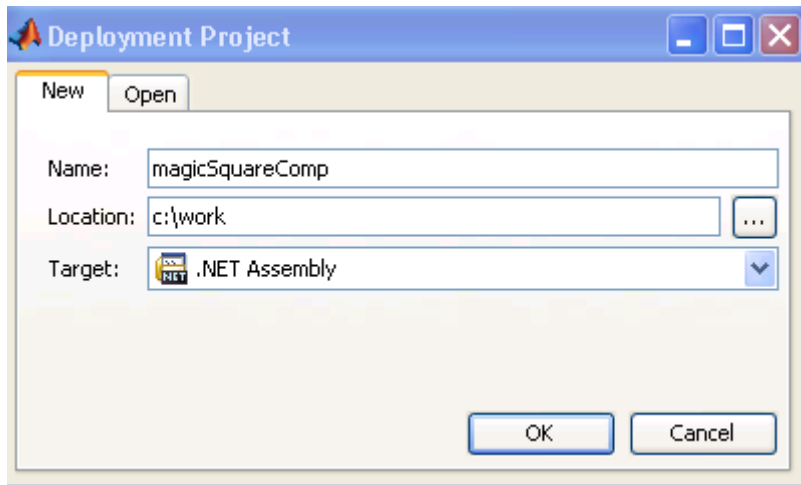
You create a .NET component by using the Deployment Tool GUI to build a .NET class that wraps around the sample MATLAB code discussed in “Testing the MATLAB File You Want to Deploy” on page 1-11.

Use the following information when creating your component as you work through this example:

Project Name	magicSquareComp
Class Name	magicSquareClass
File to compile	makesquare.m

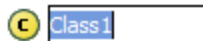


- 1 Start MATLAB.
- 2 Type `deploytool` at the command prompt and press Enter. The `deploytool` GUI opens.
- 3 Create a deployment project using the Deployment Project dialog:
  - a Type the name of your project in the **Name** field.
  - b Enter the location of the project in the **Location** field. Alternately, navigate to the location.
  - c Select the target for the deployment project from the **Target** drop-down menu.
  - d Click **OK**.



#### Creating a .NET Project

- 4 On the **Build** tab:
  - If you are building a COM application, click **Add files**
  - If you are building a .NET application, click **Add class**. Type the name of the class in the Class Name field, designated by the letter “c”:




For this class, add files you want to compile by clicking **Add files**. To add another class, click **Add class**.

---

**Note** You may optionally add supporting files. For examples of these files, see the `deploytool` Help. To add these files, in the Shared Resources and Helper Files area:

- a** Click **Add files/directories**
  - b** Click **Open** to select the file or files.
- 

**5** When you complete your changes, click the Build button ()

**How the .NET Builder Creates a Component.** To create a component, the builder does the following:

**1** Generates C# code to implement your component

The first step of the build process generates two C# files: a component data file and a component wrapper. The component data file contains static information for the component. The wrapper contains the implementation code for the .NET component and provides a .NET application programming interface (API) for the MATLAB functions you add to the project at design time.

**2** Compiles the C# code and generates `/distrib` and `/src` subfolders

The second step of the build process compiles the two C# files produced in step 1, creating a managed assembly for the component.

The MATLAB Builder NE product creates two subfolders under the project folder: `project-folder/src` and `project-folder/distrib`. These subfolders contain the following files.

### Files in the Project Subfolders


Subfolder	Files	Description
src	<i>ComponentName</i> _mcc_component_data.cs	C# component data file
	<i>ClassName1</i> .cs ... <i>ClassNameN</i> .cs	C# wrapper class file
distrib	<i>ComponentName</i> .dll	.NET component assembly
	<i>ComponentName</i> .pdb	.NET component debug file (Debug builds only)
	<i>ComponentName</i> .xml	.NET component XML documentation file
	<i>ComponentNameNative</i> .dll	Native .NET DLL (See “Remotable Components” on page 1-3 for information).
	MWArray.xml <i>component_name</i> .xml <i>component_name_overview</i> .html	Documentation template files. See “Using Enhanced XML Documentation Files” on page 3-26.
	readme.txt	Readme file for users

**Note** When you build your project, you can specify the compilation of a private or shared assembly. A private assembly is copied to an application subfolder and is owned exclusively by the application. A shared assembly usually resides in the Global Assembly Cache, and can be directly referenced by multiple applications.

For information about how the builder works in conjunction with MATLAB Compiler, see “How Does MATLAB® Compiler Software Build My Application?” on page 2-4 in the MATLAB Compiler User’s Guide.

## Packaging Your Component (Optional)

Bundling the .NET component with additional files you can distribute to users is called packaging. You perform this step using the packaging function of `deploytool`. Alternately, copy the contents of the `distrib` folder and the MCR Installer to a local folder of your choice. If you are creating a shared component and want to include additional code with the component, you must perform this step.

- 1 On the **Package** tab, add the MATLAB Compiler Runtime (the MCR) by clicking **Add MCR**.
- 2 Next, add others files useful for end users. The `readme.txt` file contains important information about others files useful for end users. To package additional files or folders, click **Add file/directories**, select the file or folder you want to package, and click **Open**.
- 3 In the Deployment Tool, click the Packaging button ()
- 4 On Windows, the package is a self-extracting executable. On platforms other than Windows, it is a .zip file. Verify that the contents of the `distrib` folder contains the files you specified.

---

**Note** When the self-extracting executable is uncompressed on a system, `VCREDSIT_X86` is installed. `VCREDSIT_X86` installs run-time components of Microsoft Visual C++ libraries necessary for running Visual C++ applications.

---

**What Happens in the Packaging Process?** The package process zips the following files into a single self-extracting executable, `componentName.exe`:

- `componentName.dll`
- `componentNameNative.dll`

---

**Note** See “Remotable Components” on page 1-3 and Chapter 8, “Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting” for more details.

---

- *componentName.xml*
- *componentName.pdb* (if the **Debug** option is selected)
- *MCRInstaller.exe* (if the **Include MCR** option is selected)
- *\_install.bat* (script run by the self-extracting executable)

**How the MCR Is Shared Among Classes.** The builder creates a single MCR instance for each MATLAB Builder NE class in an application. This MCR instance is reused and shared among all subsequent class instances within the component, resulting in more efficient memory usage and eliminating the MCR startup cost in each subsequent class instantiation. All class instances share a single MATLAB workspace and share global variables in the MATLAB files used to build the component.

The following example creates a .NET component called *mycomponent* containing a single .NET class named *myclass* with methods *foo* and *bar*.

If and when multiple instances of *myclass* are instantiated in an application, only one MCR is initialized, and it is shared by all instances of *myclass*.

```
mcc -B 'dotnet:mycomponent,myclass,2.0,Private,local' foo.m bar.m
```

## Copying the Package You Created

Copy the package that you created from the *distrib* folder to the local folder of your choice or send them directly to the .NET programmer.

## Using the Command Line to Create .NET Components

Instead of using the Deployment Tool to create .NET components, you can use the *mcc* command.

The following sections describe the subset of `mcc` command options that you need to create .NET components. The sections provide detailed `mcc` syntax with examples.

To learn more about the `mcc` command and all of its options, see the MATLAB Compiler documentation.

### Command-Line Syntax Description

The following command defines the complete `mcc` command syntax with all required and optional arguments used to create a .NET component. Brackets indicate optional parts of the syntax.

```
mcc -W 'dotnet:component_name,class_name,
0.0|framework_version, Private|Encryption_Key_Path,local|remote'
file1 [file2...fileN][class{class_name:file1
[,file2,...,fileN]},... [-d output_dir_path] -T link:lib
```

---

**Note** For complete information about the `mcc` command, including the `-W` option, see `mcc` in the function reference section of this user's guide.

---

### Using the Command Line to Start the Deployment Tool GUI

Desired Result	Command
Starts Deployment Tool GUI with the <b>New/Open</b> dialog active	<code>deploytool</code> (default) or <code>deploytool -n</code>
Starts Deployment Tool GUI and loads <code>project_name</code>	<code>deploytool project_name.prj</code>
Starts Deployment Tool command line interface and builds <code>project_name</code> after initializing	<code>deploytool -build project_name.prj</code>

Desired Result	Command
Starts Deployment Tool command line interface and packages <code>project_name</code> after initializing	<code>deploytool -package project_name.prj</code>
Displays MATLAB Help for the <code>deploytool</code> command	<code>deploytool -?</code>

### Using the .NET Bundle Files to Simplify the Command

To simplify the command line used to create .NET components, you can use the .NET Builder bundle file, named `dotnet`, to make creating .NET components easier. When using this bundle file, you must still pass in the five parts (including `local|remote`) of the `-W` argument text string, however, you do not have to specify the `-T` option.

The following example creates a .NET component called `mycomponent` containing a single .NET class named `myclass` with methods `foo` and `bar`. When used with the `-B` option, the word *dotnet* specifies the name of the predefined .NET Builder bundle file.

```
mcc -B 'dotnet:mycomponent,myclass,2.0,encryption_keyfile_path,local'
foo.m bar.m
```

In this example, the builder uses the .NET Framework version 2.0 to compile the component into a shared assembly using the key file specified in `encryption_keyfile_path` to sign the shared component.

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

### Example: Creating a .NET Component Namespace

The following example creates a .NET component from two MATLAB files `foo.m` and `bar.m`.

```
mcc -B 'dotnet:mycompany.mygroup.mycomponent,myclass,0.0,Private,local'
```

```
foo.m bar.m
```

The example creates a .NET component named `mycomponent` that has the following namespace: `mycompany.mygroup`. The component contains a single .NET class, `myclass`, which contains methods `foo` and `bar`.

To use `myclass`, place the following statement in your code:

```
using mycompany.mygroup;
```

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

### **Example: Adding Multiple Classes to a Component**

The following example creates a .NET component that includes more than one class. This example uses the optional `class{...}` argument to the `mcc` command.

```
mcc -B 'dotnet:mycompany.mycomponent,myclass,2.0,Private,local' foo.m bar.m  
class{myclass2:foo2.m,bar2.m}
```

The example creates a .NET component named `mycomponent` with two classes:

- `myclass` has methods `foo` and `bar`
- `myclass2` has methods `foo2` and `bar2`

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

### **The MATLAB Compiler Build Process**

To generate and package an application, the user:

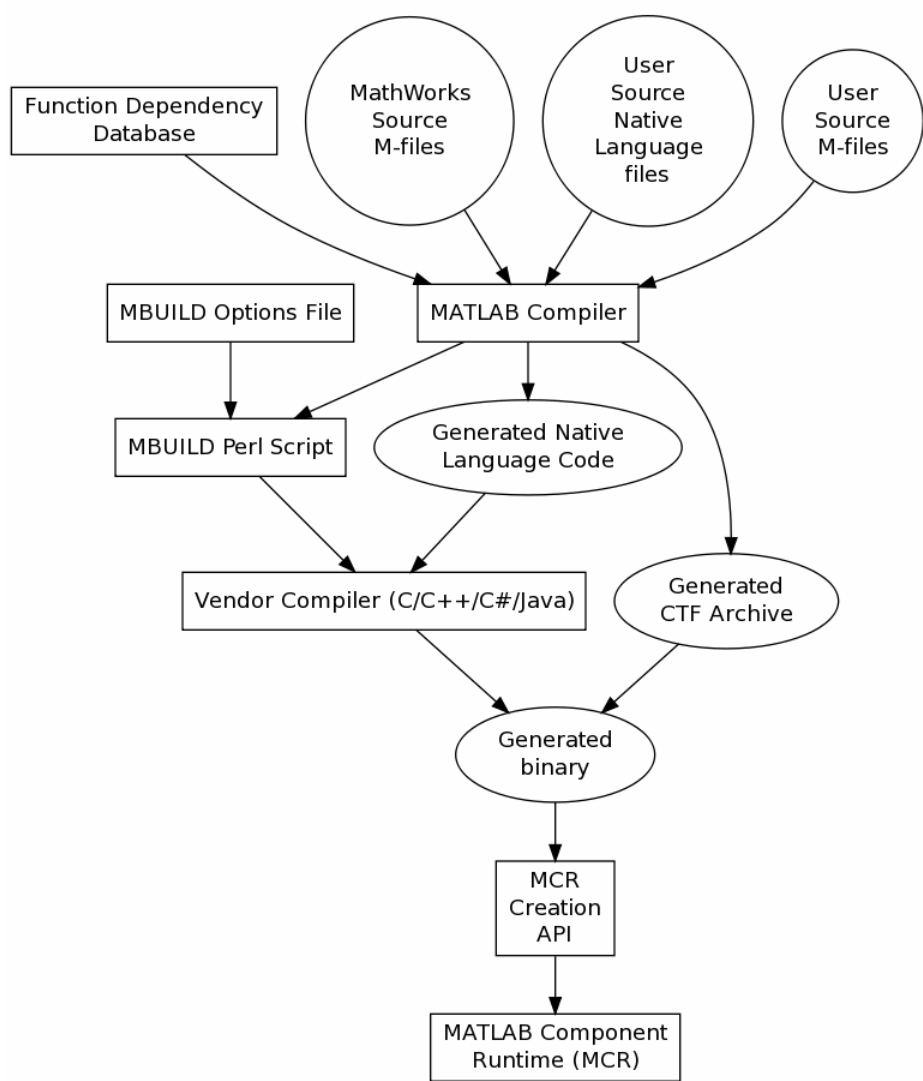
- 1** Writes an application or component in MATLAB
- 2** Invokes the MATLAB Compiler, which:
  - a** Examines the input MATLAB files and the external dependency database to determine the complete list of all functions used by the application or component. As part of this process, MATLAB Compiler



determines which files are not able to be compiled and automatically excludes them.

- b** Determines which functions are to be made publicly visible (for example, those that can be called from another product or environment).
  - c** Generates the appropriate interface code files based on the public function list and the complete function list from the preceding steps. The interface code generated is also dependent on what target the user wants to create (for example, a Java™ component, a standalone executable, or a Microsoft® Excel® add-in).
  - d** Packages compilable functions into a CTF archive, creating a file on the user's disk. This archive is embedded by default in the binary executable.
  - e** Optionally, invokes target specific compiler to generate a binary application or component from the files in C and the interface code libraries provided by The MathWorks.
- 3** Locates the install package for the MATLAB Compiler Runtime (MCR).
- 4** Collects together the binary, the CTF archive, and the MCR installer (along with other optional, user-specified files) for the user.

The deployment GUI (`deploytool`) automates many of the steps in the process for user convenience.



- Circles: Input Files
- Boxes: MathWorks-supplied components
- Ellipses: Output Files

## Magic Square Example: .NET Programmer Tasks

The following tasks are usually performed by the .NET programmer.

### Key Tasks for the .NET Programmer

Task	Reference
1. Ensure you have the needed files from the MATLAB programmer before proceeding.	“Gathering Files Needed for Deployment” on page 1-23
2. Use the component in a .NET application. Compile and run the component to ensure it produces the same results as your MATLAB code.	“Using the Component in an Application” on page 1-25
3. Archive and distribute the output to end users.	“Distributing the Component to End Users” on page 1-28
4. Integrate classes generated by the MATLAB Builder NE product into existing .NET applications.	“Integrating .NET Classes Generated by MATLAB into a .NET Application” on page 1-28
5. Verify your .NET application works as expected in your end user’s deployment environment.	“Building and Testing the .NET Application” on page 1-33

### Gathering Files Needed for Deployment

Before beginning, verify you have access to the following files, created by the MATLAB programmer in “Copying the Package You Created” on page 1-17. The following files are required to deploy to users who do not have a copy of MATLAB installed:

- MCR Installer. For locations of all MCR Installers, run the `mcrinstaller` command.
- `readme.txt`

See “Packaging Your Component (Optional)” on page 1-16 for more information about these files. You will also want to communicate the location of the MWArray Class Library Reference. You can also browse to this library from the MATLAB Builder NE help tree (left pane of MATLAB Product Help).

**How Component Deployment Works.** To deploy the component, run the MCR installer. The installer does the following:

- 1 Installs the MCR (if not already installed on the target machine)
- 2 Installs the component assembly in the folder from which the installer is run
- 3 Copies the MWArray assembly to the Global Assembly Cache (GAC), as part of installing the MCR

---

**Note** Since installing the MCR requires write access to the system registry, you must have administrator privileges to run the MCR Installer.

---

---

**Note** On target machines where the MCR Installer is run, the MCR Installer puts the MWArray assembly in *installation\_folder\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework\_version*.

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

---

The MCR Installer uses a standard Microsoft installation file that provides the following features:

- Integrates with Add/Remove Programs in the Control Panel
- Checks software prerequisites before installation
- Checks for proper user permissions
- Rolls back the system to its prior state on installation failure
- Supports component versioning

## Using the Component in an Application

- 1 Write source code for an application that uses the .NET component created in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12.

The C# source code for the sample application for this example is in `MagicSquareExample\MagicSquareCSApp\MagicSquareApp.cs`.

The program listing is shown here.

---

**Tip** Although MATLAB Builder NE generates C# code for the `MagicSquare` component and the sample application is in C#, applications that use the component do not need to be coded in C#. You can access the component from any CLS-compliant .NET language. For examples, see Chapter 5, “Sample Applications (Microsoft® Visual Basic .NET)”.

---

### MagicSquareApp.cs

```
// *****  
//  
// MagicDemoApp.cs  
//  
// This file is an example application for the MATLAB Builder NE product.  
//  
// Copyright 2001-2009 The MathWorks, Inc.  
//  
// *****  
  
using System;  
  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;  
  
using MagicDemoComp;  
  
namespace MathWorks.Demo.MagicSquareApp  
{
```

```
/// <summary>
/// The MagicSquareApp demo class computes a magic square of the user-specified size.
/// </summary>
/// <remarks>
/// args[0] - a positive integer representing the array size.
/// </remarks>
class MagicDemoApp
{
    #region MAIN

    /// <summary>
    /// The main entry point for the application.
    /// </summary>
    [STAThread]
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        MWNumericArray arraySize= null;
        MWNumericArray magicSquare= null;

        try
        {
            // Get user-specified command line arguments or set default
            arraySize= (0 != args.Length) ? System.Double.Parse(args[0]) : 4;

            // Create the magic square object
            MagicSquareClass magic= new MagicSquare();

            // Compute the magic square and print the result
            magicSquare= (MWNumericArray)magic.makesquare((MWArray)arraySize);

            Console.WriteLine("Magic square of order {0}\n\n{1}", arraySize, magicSquare);

            // Convert the magic square array to a two-dimensional native double array
            double[,] nativeArray= (double[,])magicSquare.ToArray(MWArrayComponent.Real);

            Console.WriteLine("\nMagic square as native array:\n");

            // Display the array elements:
            for (int i= 0; i < (int)arraySize; i++)
                for (int j= 0; j < (int)arraySize; j++)
```

```

        Console.WriteLine("Element({0},{1})= {2}", i, j, nativeArray[i,j]);

        Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }
}
}
#endregion
}
}

```

## 2 Build the application using Visual Studio® .NET.

---

**Note** In the project file for this example, the MWArray assembly and the magic square component assembly have been prereferenced. Any references preceded by an exclamation point require you to remove the reference and rereference the affected assembly.

---



---

**Note** Microsoft .NET Framework version 2.0 is not supported by Visual Studio 2003.

---

- a Open the project file for the Magic Square example (MagicSquareCSApp.csproj) in Visual Studio .NET.
- b If necessary, add a reference to the MWArray component in *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework\_version*.

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

- c If necessary, add a reference to the Magic Square component (MagicSquareComp), which is in the distrib subfolder.

## Distributing the Component to End Users

If you bundled the component as a self-extracting executable, paste it in a folder on the development machine and run it. If you are using a .zip file bundled with WinZip, unzip and extract the contents to the development machine.

## Integrating .NET Classes Generated by MATLAB into a .NET Application

- “Classes and Methods” on page 1-28
- “Component and Class Naming Conventions” on page 1-29
- “Versioning” on page 1-29
- “Managing Data Conversion Issues with MATLAB® Builder NE Data Conversion Classes” on page 1-29
- “Automatic Casting to MATLAB Types” on page 1-31
- “Adding Fields to Data Structures and Data Structure Arrays” on page 1-32
- “About MATLAB Array Indexing” on page 1-32
- “Accessing Your Component On Another Computer” on page 1-32

**Classes and Methods.** The builder project contains the files and settings needed by the MATLAB Builder NE product to create a deployable .NET component. A project specifies information about classes and methods, including the MATLAB functions to be included.

The builder transforms MATLAB functions that are specified in the component’s project to methods belonging to a *managed class*.

When creating a component, you must provide one or more class names as well as a component name. The component name also specifies the name of the assembly that implements the component. The class name denotes the name of the class that encapsulates MATLAB functions.

To access the features and operations provided by the MATLAB functions, instantiate the managed class generated by the builder, and then call the methods that encapsulate the MATLAB functions.



**Component and Class Naming Conventions.** Typically you should specify names for components and classes that will be clear to programmers who use your components. For example, if you are encapsulating many MATLAB functions, it helps to determine a scheme of function categories and to create a separate class for each category. Also, the name of each class should be descriptive of what the class does.

The *.NET Framework General Reference* recommends the use of *Pascal case* for capitalizing the names of identifiers of three or more characters. That is, the first letter in the identifier and the first letter of each subsequent concatenated word are capitalized. For example:

```
MakeSquare
```

In contrast, MATLAB programmers typically use all lowercase for names of functions. For example:

```
makesquare
```

By convention, the MATLAB Builder NE examples use Pascal case.

Valid characters are any alpha or numeric characters, as well as the underscore ( `_` ) character.

**Versioning.** The builder supports the standard versioning capabilities provided by the .NET Framework.

---

**Note** You can make side-by-side invocations of multiple versions of a component within the same application only if they access the same version of the MCR.

---

**Managing Data Conversion Issues with MATLAB Builder NE Data Conversion Classes.** To support data conversion between managed types and MATLAB types, the builder provides a set of data conversion classes derived from the abstract class, `MWArray`.

When you invoke a method on a component, the input and output parameters are a derived type of `MWArray`. To pass parameters, you can either instantiate one of the `MWArray` subclasses explicitly, or, in many cases, pass the

parameters as a *managed data type* and rely on the implicit data conversion feature of .NET Builder.

## Overview of Classes and Methods in the Data Conversion Class Hierarchy

The data conversion classes are built as a class hierarchy that represents the major MATLAB array types.

---

**Note** See “Overview” on page 10-7 for an introduction to the classes and see MWArray Class Library Reference (available online only) for details about this class library.

---

The root of the hierarchy is the MWArray abstract class. The MWArray class has the following subclasses representing the major MATLAB types: MWNumericArray, MWLogicalArray, MWCharArray, MWCellArray, and MWStructArray.

MWArray and its derived classes provide the following functionality:

- Constructors and destructors to instantiate and dispose of MATLAB arrays
- Properties to get and set the array data
- Indexers to support a subset of MATLAB array indexing
- Implicit and explicit data conversion operators
- General methods

## Advantage of Using Data Conversion Classes

The MWArray data conversion classes allow you to pass most native .NET value types as parameters directly without using explicit data conversion. There is an implicit cast operator for most native numeric and string types that will convert the native type to the appropriate MATLAB array.

## Automatic Casting to MATLAB Types.

---

**Note** Because the conversion process is automatic (in most cases), you do not need to understand the conversion process to pass and return arguments with MATLAB Builder NE components.

---

In most instances, if a native .NET primitive or array is used as an input parameter in a C# program, the builder transparently converts it to an instance of the appropriate `MWArray` class before it is passed on to the component method. The builder can convert most CLS-compliant string, numeric type, or multidimensional array of these types to an appropriate `MWArray` type.

---

**Note** This conversion is transparent in C# applications, but might require an explicit casting operator in other languages, for example, `op_implicit` in Visual Basic®.

---

Here is an example. Consider the .NET statement:

```
result = theFourier.plotfft(3, data, interval);
```

In this statement the third argument, namely `interval`, is of the .NET native type `System.Double`. The builder casts this argument to a MATLAB 1-by-1 double `MWNumericArray` type (which is a wrapper class containing a MATLAB double array).

See “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4 for a list of all the data types that are supported along with their equivalent types in the MATLAB product.

---

**Note** There are some data types commonly used in the MATLAB product that are not available as native .NET types. Examples are cell arrays, structure arrays, and arrays of complex numbers. Represent these array types as instances of `MWCellArray`, `MWStructArray`, and `MWNumericArray`, respectively.

---

**Adding Fields to Data Structures and Data Structure Arrays.** When adding fields to data structures and data structure arrays, do so using standard programming techniques. Do not use the `set` command as a shortcut.

For examples of how to correctly add fields to data structures and data structure arrays, see the programming examples in Chapter 4, “Sample Applications (C#)” and Chapter 5, “Sample Applications (Microsoft® Visual Basic .NET)”.

**About MATLAB Array Indexing.** .NET Builder provides indexers to support a subset of MATLAB array indexing.

---

**Note** If each element in a large array returned by a .NET Builder component is to be indexed, the returned MATLAB array should first be converted to a native array using the `toArray()` method. This results in much better performance.

---

Don't keep the array in MATLAB type; convert it to a native array first. See Chapter 1, “Getting Started” for an example of native type conversion.

**Accessing Your Component On Another Computer.** To implement your .NET component on a computer other than the one on which it was built:

- 1** If the component is not already installed on the machine where you want to develop your application, run the self-extracting executable that you created in “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9.

This step is not necessary if you are developing your application on the same machine where you created the .NET component.

- 2** Reference the .NET component in your Microsoft® Visual Studio® project or from the command line of a CLS-compliant compiler.

You must also add a reference to the `MWArray` component in `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version`.

See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

- 3** Instantiate the generated .NET Builder classes and call the class methods as you would with any .NET class. To marshal data between the native .NET types and the MATLAB array type, you need to use either the `MWArray` data conversion classes or the `MWArray` native API. See `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only) for details about the `MWArray` API for this class library.

## **Building and Testing the .NET Application**

- 1** Build and test the .NET application as you would any application.
- 2** Create an application installation package for end users that includes the files required for the .NET Builder components that encapsulate the MATLAB functions.

## Next Steps

After you create and distribute the initial application, you probably want to continue to enhance it. Pointers to documentation detailing some of the more common tasks you perform as you develop your application are listed here.

Writing .NET applications that can access .NET methods that encapsulate MATLAB code

Chapter 3, “Using Components Created by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product”

Sample applications that access methods developed in MATLAB

Chapter 4, “Sample Applications (C#)” and Chapter 5, “Sample Applications (Microsoft® Visual Basic .NET)”

Deploying .NET components over the Web

Chapter 6, “Deploying a MATLAB Figure Over the Web Using WebFigures”

Creating a remotable component or learning about remotable components


Chapter 8, “Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting”

# Writing Deployable MATLAB Code

---

- “The MATLAB Application Deployment Products” on page 2-2
- “Building Your Application with the Application Deployment Products and the Deployment Tool” on page 2-4
- “Guidelines for Writing Deployable MATLAB Code” on page 2-10
- “Working with MATLAB Data Files Using Load and Save” on page 2-14

## The MATLAB Application Deployment Products

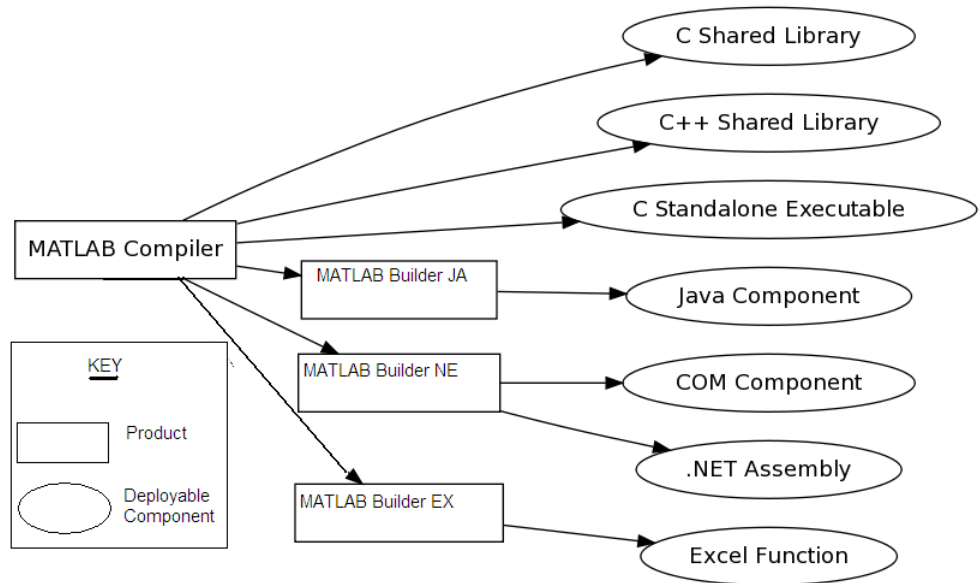
 <b>MATLAB Programmer</b>	MATLAB expert No IT experience No access to IT systems	Develops model Uses the builder tools to create a component that is given to the business service developer
---	--	--

The following tables summarizes the target applications supported by each product.:

### The MATLAB Suite of Application Deployment Products

Product	Target	Create Standalone Executables?	Create Function Libraries?	Create Applications with Graphics?	Create Web Applications?
MATLAB Compiler	C and C++ standalones and libraries	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
MATLAB Builder NE	C# .NET components Visual Basic COM components	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
MATLAB Builder JA	Java components	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
MATLAB Builder EX	Microsoft Excel add-ins	No	Yes	Yes	No





### The MATLAB® Application Deployment Products

Each of the builder products uses the MATLAB Compiler core code to create deployable components.

## Building Your Application with the Application Deployment Products and the Deployment Tool

### In this section...

“What Is the Difference Between the Deployment Tool and the mcc Command Line?” on page 2-4

“How Does MATLAB® Compiler Software Build My Application?” on page 2-4

“What You Should Know About the Dependency Analysis Function (depfun)” on page 2-5

“Compiling MEX-Files, DLLs, or Shared Libraries” on page 2-6

“The Role of the Component Technology File (CTF Archive)” on page 2-7

### What Is the Difference Between the Deployment Tool and the mcc Command Line?

Using the Deployment Tool (`deploytool`) GUI, you perform any function you would invoke using the MATLAB Compiler `mcc` command-line interface. The Deployment Tool interactive menus and dialogs build `mcc` commands that are customized to your specification. As such, your MATLAB code is processed the same way as if you were compiling it using `mcc`.

Using the Deployment Tool, you:

- Perform related deployment tasks with a single intuitive GUI.
- Maintain related information in a convenient project file. Your project state persists between sessions. Your previous project loads automatically when the Deployment Tool starts. You load previously stored compiler projects from a prepopulated menu.
- Package applications for distribution.

### How Does MATLAB Compiler Software Build My Application?

MATLAB Compiler software:

- 1** Parses command-line arguments and classifies by type the files you provide.
- 2** Analyzes files for dependencies using the Dependency Analysis Function (`depfun`). Dependencies affect deployability and originate from file contents—functions called by the file. Deployability is affected by:
  - File type — MATLAB, Java, MEX, and so on.
  - File location — MATLAB, MATLAB toolbox, user code, and so on.
  - File deployability — Whether the file is deployable outside of MATLABFor more information about `depfun`, see “What You Should Know About the Dependency Analysis Function (`depfun`)” on page 2-5.
- 3** Validates MEX-files. In particular, `mexFunction` entry points are verified). For more details about MEX-file processing, see “Compiling MEX-Files, DLLs, or Shared Libraries” on page 2-6.
- 4** Creates a CTF archive from the input files and their dependencies. For more details about CTF archives see “The Role of the Component Technology File (CTF Archive)” on page 2-7.
- 5** Generates target-specific wrapper code. For example, the wrapper for a C main function is very different than the wrapper for a Java interface class.
- 6** Invokes a third-party target-specific compiler to create the appropriate binary software component (a standalone executable, a Java JAR file, and so on).

For details about how MATLAB Compiler software builds your deployable component, see “The MATLAB® Compiler Build Process” on page 1-20.

## What You Should Know About the Dependency Analysis Function (`depfun`)

MATLAB Compiler uses a dependency analysis function (`depfun`) to determine the list of necessary files to include in the CTF package. In some cases, this process includes an large number of files. This is often true when MATLAB object classes exist in the compilation and `depfun` cannot resolve overloaded methods at compile time. Dependency analysis also processes `include/exclude` files on each pass (see the `mcc` flag “-a Add to Archive”).

---

**Tip** To improve compile time performance and lessen application size, prune the path with “-N Clear Path”, “-p Add Directory to Path”, or by specifying **Toolboxes on Path** in the **deploytool Settings**

---

`depfun` searches for executable content such as:

- MATLAB files
- P-files
- Java classes and .jar files
- .fig files
- MEX-files

`depfun` does not search for data files of any kind (except MAT files). You must manually include data files.

### Compiling MEX-Files, DLLs, or Shared Libraries

When you compile MATLAB functions containing MEX-files, ensure that `depfun` can find them—doing so allows you to avoid many common compilation problems. In particular, note that:

- `depfun` cannot examine MEX-files, DLLs, or shared libraries to determine their dependencies. Explicitly include all binaries these files require either with the `mcc -a` option or the options on the **Advanced** tab in the Deployment Tool under **Settings**.
- If you have any doubts that `depfun` can find a MATLAB function called by a MEX-file, DLL, or shared library—manually include it. Do this with either the `mcc -a` option or by using the options on the **Advanced** tab in the Deployment Tool under **Settings**.
- Not all functions are compatible with MATLAB Compiler. Check the file `mccExcludedFiles.log` after your build completes. This file lists all functions called from your application that you cannot deploy.

## The Role of the Component Technology File (CTF Archive)

Each application or shared library produced by MATLAB Compiler has an associated Component Technology File (CTF) archive. The archive contains all the MATLAB based content (MATLAB files, MEX-files, and so on) associated with the component.

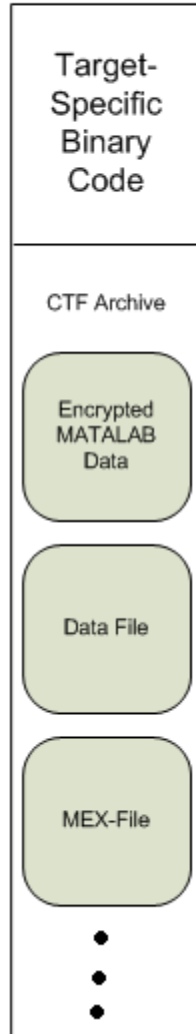
MATLAB Compiler also embeds a CTF archive in each generated binary. The CTF houses all deployable files. All MATLAB files encrypt in the CTF archive using the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) cryptosystem.

If you choose to extract the CTF archive as a separate file the files remain encrypted. For more information on how to extract the CTF archive refer to the references in the following table.

### Information on CTF Archive Embedding/Extraction and Component Cache

Product	Refer to
MATLAB Compiler	“Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding Using the MCR Component Cache”
MATLAB Builder NE	“Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for Components Using the MCR Component Cache” on page 3-24
MATLAB Builder JA	“Using MCR Component Cache and MWComponentOptions”
MATLAB Builder EX	“Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for Components Using the MCR Component Cache”

## Generated Component (EXE, DLL, SO, etc)



### **Additional Details**

Multiple CTF archives, such as those generated with COM, .NET, or Excel® components, can coexist in the same user application. You cannot, however, mix and match the MATLAB files they contain. You cannot combine encrypted and compressed MATLAB files from multiple CTF archives into another CTF archive and distribute them.

All the MATLAB files from a given CTF archive associate with a unique cryptographic key. MATLAB files with different keys, placed in the same CTF archive, do not execute. If you want to generate another application with a different mix of MATLAB files, recompile these MATLAB files into a new CTF archive.

MATLAB Compiler deleted the CTF archive and generated binary following a failed compilation, but only if these files did not exist before compilation initiates. Run `help mcc -K` for more information.

---

**Caution Release Engineers and Software Configuration Managers:** Do not use build procedures or processes that strip shared libraries on CTF archives. If you do, you can possibly strip the CTF archive from the binary, resulting in run-time errors for the driver application.

---

## Guidelines for Writing Deployable MATLAB Code

### In this section...

“Compiled Applications Do Not Process MATLAB Files at Runtime” on page 2-10

“Do Not Rely on Changing Directory or Path to Control the Execution of MATLAB Files” on page 2-11

“Use ismcc and isdeployed Functions To Execute Deployment-Specific Code Paths” on page 2-11

“Gradually Refactor Applications That Depend on Noncompilable Functions” on page 2-12

“Do Not Create or Use Nonconstant Static State Variables” on page 2-12

### Compiled Applications Do Not Process MATLAB Files at Runtime

The MATLAB Compiler was designed so that you can deploy locked down functionality. Deployable MATLAB files are suspended or frozen at the time MATLAB Compiler encrypts them—they do not change from that point onward. This does not mean that you cannot deploy a flexible application—it means that *you must design your application with flexibility in mind*. If you want the end user to be able to choose between two different methods, for example, they both must be compiled in.

The MCR only works on MATLAB code that was encrypted when the component was built. Any function or process that dynamically generates new MATLAB code will not work against the MCR.

Some MATLAB toolboxes, such as the Neural Network Toolbox™ product, generate MATLAB code dynamically. Because the MCR only executes encrypted MATLAB files, and the Neural Network Toolbox generates unencrypted MATLAB files, some functions in the Neural Network Toolbox cannot be deployed.

Similarly, functions that need to examine the contents of a MATLAB function file cannot be deployed. HELP, for example, is dynamic and not available in



deployed mode. You can use `LOADLIBRARY` in deployed mode if you provide it with a MATLAB function prototype.

Instead of compiling the function that generates the MATLAB code and attempting to deploy it, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Run the code once in MATLAB to obtain your generated function.
- 2 Compile the MATLAB code with MATLAB Compiler, including the generated function.

---

**Tip** Another alternative to using `EVAL` or `FEVAL` is using anonymous function handles.

---

If you require the ability to create MATLAB code for dynamic runtime processing, your end-users must have an installed copy of MATLAB.

## **Do Not Rely on Changing Directory or Path to Control the Execution of MATLAB Files**

In general, good programming practices advise against redirecting a program search path dynamically within the code. Many programmers are prone to this behavior since it mimics the actions they usually perform on the command line. However, this can lead to problems when deploying code.

For example, in a deployed application, the MATLAB and Java paths are fixed and cannot change. Therefore, any attempts to change these paths (using the `cd` command or the `addpath` command) fails

If you find you cannot avoid placing `addpath` calls in your MATLAB code, use `ismcc` and `isdeployed`. See the next section for details.

## **Use `ismcc` and `isdeployed` Functions To Execute Deployment-Specific Code Paths**

The `isdeployed` function allows you to specify which portion of your MATLAB code is deployable, and which is not. Such specification minimizes your compilation errors and helps create more efficient, maintainable code.

For example, you find it unavoidable to use `addpath` when writing your `startup.m`. Using `ismcc` and `isdeployed`, you specify when and what is compiled and executed.

For an example of using `isdeployed`, see “Passing Arguments to and from a Standalone Application”.

### **Gradually Refactor Applications That Depend on Noncompilable Functions**

Over time, refactor, streamline, and modularize MATLAB code containing non-compilable or non-deployable functions that use `ismcc` and `isdeployed`. Your eventual goal is “graceful degradation” of non-deployable code. In other words, the code must present the end user with as few obstacles to deployment as possible until it is practically eliminated.

Partition your code into design-time and run-time code sections:

- *Design-time code* is code that is currently evolving. Almost all code goes through a phase of perpetual rewriting, debugging, and optimization. In some toolboxes, such as the Neural Network Toolbox product, the code goes through a period of self-training as it reacts to various data permutations and patterns. Such code is almost never designed to be deployed.
- *Run-time code*, on the other hand, has solidified or become stable—it is in a finished state and is ready to be deployed by the end user.

Consider creating a separate directory for code that is not meant to be deployed or for code that calls undeployable code.

### **Do Not Create or Use Nonconstant Static State Variables**

Avoid using the following:

- Global variables in MATLAB code
- Static variables in MEX-files
- Static variables in Java code

The state of these variables is persistent and shared with everything in the process.

Persistent variables can cause problems because the MCR process runs in a single thread. You cannot load more than one of these non-constant, static variables into the same process. In addition, these static variables do not work well in multithreaded applications.

If you must use static variables, bind them to instances. For example, defining instance variables in a Java class is preferable to defining the variable as `static`.

---

**Note** This guideline does not apply to MATLAB Builder EX customers. When programming with Microsoft Excel, you can assign global variables to large matrices that persist between calls.

---

## Working with MATLAB Data Files Using Load and Save

If your deployed application uses MATLAB data files (MAT-files), it is helpful to code `LOAD` and `SAVE` functions to manipulate the data and store it for later processing.

- Use `isdeployed` to determine if your code is running in or out of the MATLAB workspace.
- Specify the data file by full path name or relative to `ctfroot`.
- All MAT-files are unchanged after `mcc` runs. These files are not encrypted when written to the CTF archive.

For more information about CTF archives, see “The Role of the Component Technology File (CTF Archive)” on page 2-7.

Use the following example as a template for manipulating your MATLAB data inside, and outside, of MATLAB.

### Using Load/Save Functions to Process MATLAB Data for Deployed Applications

The following example specifies three MATLAB data files:

- `user_data.mat`
- `userdata/extra_data.mat`
- `../externdata/extern_data.mat`

Compile `ex_loadsave.m` with the following `mcc` command:

```
mcc -mvC ex_loadsave.m -a 'user_data.mat' -a
    './userdata/extra_data.mat' -a
    '../externdata/extern_data.mat'
```

#### **ex\_loadsave.m**

```
function ex_loadsave
```

```

% This example shows how to work with the
% "load/save" functions on data files in
% deployed mode. There are three source data files
% in this example.
%   user_data.mat
%   userdata/extra_data.mat
%   ../externdata/extern_data.mat
%
% Compile this example with the mcc command:
%   mcc -mC ex_loadsave.m -a 'user_data.mat' -a
%     './userdata/extra_data.mat'
%     -a '../externdata/extern_data.mat'
% All the folders under the current main MATLAB file directory will
% be included as
% relative path to ctroot; All other folders will have the
% folder
% structure included in the ctf archive file from root of the
% disk drive.
%
% If a data file is outside of the main MATLAB file path,
% the absolute path will be
% included in ctf and extracted under ctroot. For example:
%   Data file
%     "c:\$matlabroot\examples\externdata\extern_data.mat"
% will be added into ctf and extracted to
% "$ctroot\$matlabroot\examples\externdata\extern_data.mat".
%
% All mat/data files are unchanged after mcc runs. There is
% no encryption on these user included data files. They are
% included in the ctf archive.
%
% The target data file is:
%   ./output/saved_data.mat
% When writing the file to local disk, do not save any files
% under ctroot since it may be refreshed and deleted
% when the application isnext started.
%
%==== load data file =====
if isdeployed
    % In deployed mode, all file under CTFRoot in the path are loaded

```

```
% by full path name or relative to $ctfroot.
% LOADFILENAME1=which(fullfile(ctfroot,mfilename,'user_data.mat'));
% LOADFILENAME2=which(fullfile(ctfroot,'userdata','extra_data.mat'));
LOADFILENAME1=which(fullfile('user_data.mat'));
LOADFILENAME2=which(fullfile('extra_data.mat'));
% For external data file, full path will be added into ctf;
% you don't need specify the full path to find the file.
LOADFILENAME3=which(fullfile('extern_data.mat'));
else
%running the code in MATLAB
LOADFILENAME1=fullfile(matlabroot,'extern','examples','compiler',
                        'Data_Handling','user_data.mat');
LOADFILENAME2=fullfile(matlabroot,'extern','examples','compiler',
                        'Data_Handling','userdata','extra_data.mat');
LOADFILENAME3=fullfile(matlabroot,'extern','examples','compiler',
                        'externdata','extern_data.mat');
end

% Load the data file from current working directory
disp(['Load A from : ',LOADFILENAME1]);
load(LOADFILENAME1,'data1');
disp('A= ');
disp(data1);

% Load the data file from sub directory
disp(['Load B from : ',LOADFILENAME2]);
load(LOADFILENAME2,'data2');
disp('B= ');
disp(data2);

% Load extern data outside of current working directory
disp(['Load extern data from : ',LOADFILENAME3]);
load(LOADFILENAME3);
disp('ext_data= ');
disp(ext_data);

%==== multiple the data matrix by 2 =====
result = data1*data2;
disp('A * B = ');
disp(result);
```

```
%==== save the new data to a new file =====  
SAVEPATH=strcat(pwd,filesep,'output');  
if ( ~isdir(SAVEPATH))  
    mkdir(SAVEPATH);  
end  
SAVEFILENAME=strcat(SAVEPATH,filesep,'saved_data.mat');  
disp(['Save the A * B result to : ',SAVEFILENAME]);  
save(SAVEFILENAME, 'result');
```





# Using Components Created by the MATLAB Builder NE Product

---

To use a .NET component built and packaged by the MATLAB Builder NE product, perform the following tasks.

- “Installing the Components on the Development Machine” on page 3-2
- “Specifying Component Assembly and Namespace” on page 3-3
- “Creating an Instance of a Class” on page 3-4
- “Using Dispose to Explicitly Free Resources” on page 3-5
- “Improving Data Access Using the MCR User Data Interface and MATLAB® Builder NE” on page 3-6
- “Dynamically Specifying Run-Time Options to the MCR” on page 3-11
- “Accessing Real or Imaginary Components Within Complex Arrays” on page 3-14
- “Blocking Execution of a Console Application that Creates Figures” on page 3-17
- “Using MATLAB API Functions in a C# Program” on page 3-20
- “Handling Errors” on page 3-22
- “Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for Components Using the MCR Component Cache” on page 3-24
- “Using Enhanced XML Documentation Files” on page 3-26

## Installing the Components on the Development Machine

To use components on a particular development machine, you deploy .dll file (*componentname.dll*) along with the MCR (if not already installed). You must do this even if you are not using the packaging process outlined in “Packaging Your Component (Optional)” on page 1-16.

- 1** Unpack and install the components on the machine.
- 2** Copy *componentname.exe* to a folder on the development machine, and run it.

You must repeat these steps for each machine where the component will be used.

## Specifying Component Assembly and Namespace

To use the component assembly generated using the MATLAB Builder NE product from the client application, you must

- Reference the MATLAB data conversion assembly and specify the namespace in your application, as shown:

```
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;
```

- Reference the namespace for the builder assembly generated for your particular component and specify the namespace in your application, for example:

```
using MyComponentName;
```

---

**Note** The builder supports nested namespaces.

---

Suppose you named the component you created `MyComponentName` and you want to use it in a program named `MyApp.cs`. Here are the statements to use at the beginning of `MyApp.cs`:

```
using System;  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;  
using MyComponentName;
```

## Creating an Instance of a Class

As with any .NET class, you need to create an instance of the classes you create with the MATLAB Builder NE product before you can use them in your program.

Suppose you build a component with a class named `MyComponentClass`. Here is an example of creating an instance of that class:

```
MyComponentClass classInstance = new MyComponentClass();
```

See “How the MCR Is Shared Among Classes” on page 1-17 for information about what happens when you instantiate classes.

## Using Dispose to Explicitly Free Resources

---

**Note** As of R2009b, native memory management for `mxArray` is automatically handled by .NET's CLR memory manager. There is no longer a reason to manually disable native memory management when working with `mxArray`. Calls to disable memory management will result in a null operation.

---

Usually the `Dispose` method is called from a `finally` section in a `try-finally` block as you can see in the following example:

```
try
{
    /* Allocate a huge array */
    MWNumericArray array = new MWNumericArray(1000,1000);
    .
    . (use the array)
    .
}
finally
{
    /* Explicitly dispose of the managed array and its */
    /* native resources */
    if (null != array)
    {
        array.Dispose();
    }
}
```

The statement `array.Dispose()` frees the memory allocated by both the managed wrapper and the native MATLAB array.

The `MWArray` class provides two disposal methods: `Dispose` and the static method `DisposeArray`. The `DisposeArray` method is more general in that it disposes of either a single `MWArray` or an array of arrays of type `MWArray`.

## Improving Data Access Using the MCR User Data Interface and MATLAB Builder NE

This feature allows data to be shared between an MCR instance, the MATLAB code running on that MCR, and the wrapper code that created the MCR. Through calls to the MCR User Data interface API, you access MCR data by creating a per-MCR-instance associative array of `mxArrays`, consisting of a mapping from string keys to `mxArray` values. Reasons for doing this include, but are not limited to:

- You need to supply run-time configuration information to a client running an application created with the Parallel Computing Toolbox™ software. Configuration information may be supplied (and changed) on a per-execution basis. For example, two instances of the same application may run simultaneously with different configuration files.
- You want to initialize the MCR with constant values that can be accessed by all your MATLAB applications.
- You want to set up a global workspace — a global variable or variables that MATLAB and your client can access.
- You want to store the state of any variable or group of variables.

MATLAB Builder NE software supports a per-MCR instance state access through an object-oriented API. Unlike MATLAB Compiler, access to a per-MCR instance state is optional, rather than on by default. You can access this state by adding `setmcruserdata.m` and `getmcruserdata.m` to your deployment project or by specifying them on the command line.

For more information, see “Improving Data Access Using the MCR User Data Interface” in the MATLAB Compiler User’s Guide.

### Code Snippets

The following code snippets demonstrate storing and retrieving the MCR state while working with the `MagicMatrix` function.

#### **MagicMatrix** Function

```
function magicmatrix
```

```

key = 'MagicMatrix';
m = getmcruserdata(key);
disp(m);
m = m + 1;
setmcruserdata(key, m);

```

## Building the MagicMatrix Component

```

mcc -Ngv -W dotnet:MagicMatrixComponent,MagicMatrix -T link:lib \
    magicmatrix.m setmcruserdata.m getmcruserdata.m

```

## Calling setmcruserdata

```

// Create the key and the data
string key = "MagicMatrix";
double[,] magicData = { {8, 1, 6},
                        {3, 5, 7},
                        {4, 9, 2} };
// Create an instance of the component created by the builder
MagicMatrix m = new MagicMatrix();

// Store a magic matrix under the key "MagicMatrix"
m.setmcruserdata(key, (MWNumericArray)magicData);

```

## Calling getmcruserdata

```

// Create the key, declare a variable to receive the value
String key = "MagicMatrix";
Object[] result = null;

// Create the component class (and the associated MCR instance)
m = new magicmatrix();

// Retrieve the value stored under the key in the map owned by the MCR
// associated with the component m.
result = m.getmcruserdata(1, key);

```

## Example

The following is an end-to-end example showing how to build, run, and work with the magicmatrix application and the MCR User Data interface API. This

function retrieves the numeric matrix stored under the key `MagicMatrix`, adds 1 to it and stores the result back into the per-MCR instance data map, overwriting the previous value.

### **MagixMatrix Function**

```
function magicmatrix
    key = 'MagicMatrix';
    m = getmcruserdata(key);
    disp(m);
    m = m + 1;
    setmcruserdata(key, m);
```

### **Building**

This command assumes the existence of a component named `MagicMatrixComponent` and a user-written main program in `udata.cs`.

```
C:\WINNT\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v2.0.50727\csc.exe \
    /reference:magicmatrixComponent.dll \
    /reference:%MWE_INSTALL%\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\win32\v2.0\MWArray.dll udata.cs
```

### **Executing**

```
C:\> udata.exe
```



**udata.cs**

```
// udata.cs
// Demonstrate the MCR User Data interface API in the builder.
using System;

using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;

using MagicMatrixComponent;

namespace MathWorks.Demo.UserData
{
    class MagicMatrixTest
    {
        [STAThread]
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            string key = "MagicMatrix";
            MWArray result = null;

            try
            {
                double[,] magicData = { {8, 1, 6},
                                         {3, 5, 7},
                                         {4, 9, 2} };

                // Create an instance of the component
                // created by the builder
                MagicMatrix m = new MagicMatrix();

                // Call the functions exported by the component, using
                // per-MCR instance state to communicate between
                // the C# wrapper code and the executing MATLAB functions.
                //
                // First, store a magic matrix under the key "MagicMatrix"
                m.setmcruserdata(key, (MWNumericArray)magicData);

                // Add 1 to the magic matrix, display it, and save
                // the new value in the per-MCR instance data.
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        m.magicmatrix();

        // Retrieve the new value stored under "MagicMatrix."
        result = m.getmcuserdata(key);

        // Print the result matrix
        Console.WriteLine(result);
    }
    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }
}
}
```

## Dynamically Specifying Run-Time Options to the MCR

### In this section...

“What Run-Time Options Can You Specify?” on page 3-11

“Getting MCR Option Values Using MWMCR” on page 3-11

### What Run-Time Options Can You Specify?

As of R2009a, you can pass MCR run-time options `-nojvm` and `-logfile` to MATLAB Builder NE from a client application using the assembly-level attributes `NOJVM` and `LOGFILE`. you can retrieve values of these attributes by calling methods of the `MWMCR` class to access MCR attributes and MCR state.

### Getting MCR Option Values Using MWMCR

The `MWMCR` class provides several methods to get MCR option values. The following table lists methods supported by this class.

<b>MWMCR Method</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<code>MWMCR.IsMCRInitialized()</code>	Returns true if MCR is initialized, otherwise returns false.
<code>MWMCR.IsMCRJVMEEnabled()</code>	Returns true if MCR is launched with Java Virtual Machine (JVM), otherwise returns false.
<code>MWMCR.GetMCRLogFileName()</code>	Returns the name of the log file passed with the <code>LOGFILE</code> attribute.

### Default MCR Options

If you pass no MCR options (you provide no attributes), the MCR is launched with default option values:

<b>MCR Run-Time Option</b>	<b>Default Option Values</b>
Java Virtual Machine (JVM)	<code>NOJVM(false)</code>
Log file usage	<code>LOGFILE(null)</code>

These options are all write-once, read-only properties.

Use the following attributes to represent the MCR options you want to modify.

MWMCR Attribute	Purpose
NOJVM	Lets users launch MCR with or without a JVM. It takes a Boolean as input. For example, NOJVM(true) launches MCR without a JVM.
LOGFILE	Lets users pass the name of a log file, taking the file name as input. For example, LOGFILE("logfile3.txt") .

**Example: Passing MCR Option Values from a C# Application.**

Following is an example of how MCR option values are passed from a client-side C# application:

```
[assembly: NOJVM(false), LOGFILE("logfile3.txt")]
namespace App1
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("In side main...");
            try
            {
                myclass cls = new myclass();
                cls.hello();
                Console.WriteLine("Done!!");
                Console.ReadLine();
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

}

## Accessing Real or Imaginary Components Within Complex Arrays

### In this section...

“Extracting Real or Imaginary Components” on page 3-14

“Returning Values with Component Indexing” on page 3-14

“Assigning Values with Component Indexing” on page 3-15

“Converting MATLAB Arrays to .NET Arrays Using Component Indexing” on page 3-15

### Extracting Real or Imaginary Components

When you access a complex array (an array made up of both real and imaginary data), you extract both real and imaginary parts (called components) by default. This method call, for example, extracts both real and imaginary components:

```
MWNumericArray complexResult= complexDouble[1, 2];
```

It is also possible, when calling a method to return or assign a value, to extract only the real or imaginary component of a complex matrix. To do this, call the appropriate *component indexing* method.

This section describes how to use component indexing when returning or assigning a value, and also describes how to use component indexing to convert MATLAB arrays to .NET arrays using the `ToArray` or `ToVector` methods.

### Returning Values with Component Indexing

The following section illustrates how to return values from full and sparse arrays using component indexing.

### Implementing Component Indexing on Full Complex Numeric Arrays

To return the real or imaginary component from a full complex numeric array, call the `.real` or `.imaginary` method on `MWArrayComponent` as follows:

```
complexResult= complexDouble[MWArrayComponent.Real, 1, 2];  
complexResult= complexDouble[MWArrayComponent.Imaginary, 1, 2];
```

## Implementing Component Indexing on Sparse Complex Numeric Arrays (Microsoft Visual Studio 8 and Later)

To return the real or imaginary component of a sparse complex numeric array, call the `.real` or `.imaginary` method `MWArrayComponent` as follows:

```
complexResult= sparseComplexDouble[MWArrayComponent.Real, 4, 3];  
complexResult = sparseComplexDouble[MWArrayComponent.Imaginary, 4, 3];
```

## Assigning Values with Component Indexing

The following section illustrates how to assign values to full and sparse arrays using component indexing.

## Implementing Component Indexing on Full Complex Numeric Arrays

To assign the real or imaginary component to a full complex numeric array, call the `.real` or `.imaginary` method `MWArrayComponent` as follows:

```
matrix[MWArrayComponent.Real, 2, 2]= 5;  
matrix[MWArrayComponent.Imaginary, 2, 2]= 7;
```

## Converting MATLAB Arrays to .NET Arrays Using Component Indexing

The following section illustrates how to use the `ToArray` and `ToVector` methods to convert full and sparse MATLAB arrays and vectors to .NET arrays and vectors respectively.

## Converting MATLAB Arrays to .NET Arrays

To convert MATLAB arrays to .NET arrays call the `toArray` method with either the `.real` or `.imaginary` method, as needed, on `MWArrayComponent` as follows:

```
Array nativeArray_real= matrix.ToArray(MWArrayComponent.Real);  
Array nativeArray_imag= matrix.ToArray(MWArrayComponent.Imaginary);
```

#### **Converting MATLAB Arrays to .NET Vectors**

To convert MATLAB vectors to .NET vectors (single dimension arrays) call the `.real` or `.imaginary` method, as needed, on `MWArrayComponent` as follows:

```
Array nativeArray= sparseMatrix.ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Real);  
Array nativeArray= sparseMatrix.ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Imaginary);
```



## Blocking Execution of a Console Application that Creates Figures

### In this section...

“WaitForFiguresToDie Method” on page 3-17

“Code Fragment: Using WaitForFiguresToDie to Block Execution” on page 3-18

### WaitForFiguresToDie Method

The MATLAB Builder NE product adds a `WaitForFiguresToDie` method to each .NET class that it creates. `WaitForFiguresToDie` takes no arguments. Your application can call `WaitForFiguresToDie` any time during execution.

The purpose of `WaitForFiguresToDie` is to block execution of a calling program as long as figures created in encapsulated MATLAB code are displayed. Typically you use `WaitForFiguresToDie` when:

- There are one or more figures open that were created by a .NET component created by the builder.
- The method that displays the graphics requires user input before continuing.
- The method that calls the figures was called from `main()` in a console program.

When `WaitForFiguresToDie` is called, execution of the calling program is blocked if any figures created by the calling object remain open.

---

**Tip** Consider using the `console.readline` method when possible as it accomplishes much of this functionality in a standardized manner.

---

---

**Caution** Use care when calling the `WaitForFiguresToDie` method. Calling this method from an interactive program, such as Microsoft Excel, can hang the application. This method should be called *only* from console-based programs.

---

## Code Fragment: Using `WaitForFiguresToDie` to Block Execution

The following example illustrates using `WaitForFiguresToDie` from a .NET application. The example uses a .NET component created by the MATLAB Builder NE product; the object encapsulates MATLAB code that draws a simple plot.

**1** Create a work folder for your source code. In this example, the folder is `D:\work\plotdemo`.

**2** In this folder, create the following MATLAB file:

```
drawplot.m

function drawplot()
    plot(1:10);
```

**3** Use MATLAB Builder NE to create a .NET component with the following properties:

Component name	Figure
Class name	Plotter

**4** Create a .NET program in a file named `runplot` with the following code:

```
using Figure.Plotter;

public class Main {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            plotter p = new Plotter();
            try {
```

```
        p.showPlot();
        p.WaitForFiguresToDie();
    }
    catch (Exception e) {
        console.WriteLine(e);
    }
}
}
```

**5** Compile the application.

When you run the application, the program displays a plot from 1 to 10 in a MATLAB figure window. The application ends when you dismiss the figure.

---

**Note** To see what happens without the call to `WaitForFiguresToDie`, comment out the call, rebuild the application, and run it. In this case, the figure is drawn and is immediately destroyed as the application exits.

---

## Using MATLAB API Functions in a C# Program

In this section...
“Overview” on page 3-20
“Example: Using functions engOpen and engEvalString from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program” on page 3-20

### Overview

You include functions from MATLAB APIs, such as the Engine API, in your C# code by using the `DllImport` attribute to import functions from `libeng.dll` (written in unmanaged C) and then declaring those functions as C# equivalents. The imported Engine functions are called using the `P/Invoke` mechanism, as illustrated in the example below.

### Example: Using functions `engOpen` and `engEvalString` from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program

- 1 Open Microsoft Visual Studio .NET.
- 2 Select **File > New > Project**.
- 3 Select **Visual C# Applications** in the left pane and **Console Application** in the right pane. Click **OK**.
- 4 Auto-generated code appears. Replace the auto-generated code with this code and run:

```
using System;
using System.Text;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;

namespace ConsoleApplication8
{
    class MatlabEng
    {
        [DllImport("libeng.dll")]
```

```
static extern IntPtr engOpen(string startcmd);

[DllImport("libeng.dll")]
static extern IntPtr engEvalString(IntPtr engine,
                                   string Input);

public MatlabEng()
{
    IntPtr engine;
    engine = engOpen(null);
    if (engine == IntPtr.Zero)
        throw new NullReferenceException("Failed to
                                           Initialize Engine");

    engEvalString(engine, "surf(peaks)");
}

~MatlabEng()
{
}

}

class StartProg
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        MatlabEng mat = new MatlabEng();
    }
}
}
```

## Handling Errors

As with managed code, any errors that occur during execution of an MATLAB function or during data conversion are signaled by a standard .NET exception.

Like any other .NET application, an application that calls a method generated by the MATLAB Builder NE product can handle errors by either

- Catching and handling the exception locally
- Allowing the calling method to catch it

Here are examples for each way of handling errors.

In the `GetPrimes` example the method itself handles the exception.

```
public double[] GetPrimes(int n)
{
    MWArray primes= null;
    MyPrimesClass myPrimesClass= null;
    try
    {
        myPrimesClass= new MyPrimesClass();
        primes= myPrimesClass.myprimes((double)n);
        return (double[])(MWNumericArray)primes.
            ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Real);
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Exception: {0}", ex);
        return new double[0];
    }
}
```

In the next example, the method that calls `myprimes` does not catch the exception. Instead, its calling method (that is, the method that calls the method that calls `myprimes`) handles the exception.

```
public double[] GetPrimes(int n)
{
    MWArray primes= null;
```

```
MyPrimesClass myPrimesClass= null;
try
{
    myPrimesClass= new MyPrimesClass();
    primes= myPrimesClass.myprimes((double)n);
    return (double[])(MWNumericArray)primes).
        ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Real);
}

catch (Exception e)
{
    throw;
}
}
```

## Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for Components Using the MCR Component Cache

As of R2008b, CTF data is automatically embedded directly in .NET and COM components by default. In order to extract the CTF archive manually, you must build the component using the `mcc -C` option.

If you do not use the `mcc -C` option to generate a separate CTF file, you can add environment variables to specify various options, such as:

- Defining the location where you want the CTF archive to be extracted
- Adding diagnostic error printing options that can be used when extracting the CTF, for troubleshooting purposes
- Tuning the MCR component cache size for performance reasons.

Use the following environment variables to change these settings.

Environment Variable	Purpose	Notes
MCR_CACHE_ROOT	When set to the location of where you want the CTF archive to be extracted, this variable overrides the default per-user component cache location.	Not applicable
MCR_CACHE_VERBOSE	When set, this variable prints details about the component cache for diagnostic reasons. This can be very helpful if problems are encountered during CTF archive extraction.	Not applicable
MCR_CACHE_SIZE	When set, this variable overrides the default component cache size.	The initial limit for this variable is 32M (megabytes). This may, however, be changed after you have set the variable the first time. Edit the file <code>.max_size</code> , which resides in the file designated by running



<b>Environment Variable</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Notes</b>
		the mcrcachedir command, with the desired cache size limit.

## Using Enhanced XML Documentation Files

Every MATLAB® Builder NE component includes a `readme.txt` file in the `src` and `distrib` directories. This file outlines the contents of auto-generated documentation templates included with your built component. The documentation templates are HTML and XML files that can be read and processed by any number of third-party tools.

- `MWArray.xml` — This file describes the `MWArray` data conversion classes and their associated methods. Documentation for `MWArray` classes and their methods are available [here](#).
- `component_name.xml` — This file contains the code comments for your component. Using a third party documentation tool, you can combine this file with `MWArray.xml` to produce a complete documentation file that can be packaged with the component assembly for distribution to end users.
- `component_name_overview.html` — Optionally include this file in the generated documentation file. It contains an overview of the steps needed to access the component and how to use the data conversion classes, contained in the `MWArray` class hierarchy, to pass arguments to the generated component and return the results.

# Sample Applications (C#)

---

---

**Note** The examples for the MATLAB Builder NE product are in `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VSversionnumber`, where `matlabroot` is the folder where the MATLAB product is installed and `VSversionnumber` specifies the version of Microsoft Visual Studio .NET you are using (in this case VS8 ). If you have Microsoft Visual Studio .NET installed, you can load projects for all the examples by opening the solution `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VSversionnumber\NET\DotNetExamples.sln`.

---

- “Simple Plot Example” on page 4-2
- “Passing Variable Arguments” on page 4-7
- “Spectral Analysis Example” on page 4-13
- “Matrix Math Example” on page 4-20
- “Phonebook Example” on page 4-28

---

**Note** In addition to these examples, see “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9 for a simple example that gets you started using the MATLAB Builder NE product.

---

# Simple Plot Example

In this section...
“Purpose” on page 4-2
“Procedure” on page 4-2

## Purpose

The `drawgraph` function displays a plot of input parameters `x` and `y`. The purpose of the example is to show you how to:

- Use the MATLAB Builder NE product to convert a MATLAB function (`drawgraph`) to a method of a .NET class (`Plotter`) and wrap the class in a .NET component (`PlotComp`).
- Access the component in a C# application (`PlotApp.cs`) by instantiating the `Plotter` class and using the `MWArray` class library to handle data conversion.

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- Build and run the `PlotCSApp` application, using the Visual Studio .NET development environment.

## Procedure

- 1 If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:
  - a Copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your work folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\PlotExample
```

- b At the MATLAB command prompt, change folder to the new `PlotExample\PlotComp` subfolder in your work folder.

- 2** Write the `drawgraph` function as you would any MATLAB function.

This code is already in your work folder in  
`PlotExample\PlotComp\drawgraph.m`.

- 3** While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool window:

```
deploytool
```

- 4** Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	PlotComp
Class Name	Plotter
File to compile	drawgraph.m

- 5** Write source code for a C# application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in  
`matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\PlotExample\PlotCSApp\PlotApp.cs`.

The program listing is shown here.

### **PlotApp.cs**

```
// *****
//
// PlotApp.cs
//
// This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
// that displays a MATLAB figure window.
//
// Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
//
// *****

using System;
```

```
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;

using PlotComp;

namespace MathWorks.Examples.PlotApp
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This application demonstrates plotting x-y data by graphing a simple
    /// parabola into a MATLAB figure window.
    /// </summary>
    class PlotCSApp
    {
        #region MAIN

        /// <summary>
        /// The main entry point for the application.
        /// </summary>
        [STAThread]
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                const int numPoints= 10; // Number of points to plot

                // Allocate native array for plot values
                double [,] plotValues= new double[2, numPoints];

                // Plot 5x vs x^2
                for (int x= 1; x <= numPoints; x++)
                {
                    plotValues[0, x-1]= x*5;
                    plotValues[1, x-1]= x*x;
                }

                // Create a new plotter object
                Plotter plotter= new Plotter();

                // Plot the two sets of values - Note the ability to cast the native array to a MATLAB numeric array
```

```
        plotter.drawgraph((MWNumericArray)plotValues);

        Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }
}

#endregion
}
}
```

The program does the following:

- Creates two arrays of double values
- Creates a `Plotter` object.
- Calls the `drawgraph` method to plot the equation using the MATLAB `plot` function.
- Uses `MWNumericArray` to represent the data needed by the `drawgraph` method to plot the equation.
- Uses a `try-catch` block to catch and handle any exceptions.

The statement

```
Plotter plotter= new Plotter();
```

creates an instance of the `Plotter` class, and the statement

```
plotter.drawgraph((MWNumericArray)plotValues);
```

explicitly casts the native `plotValues` to `MWNumericArray` and then calls the method `drawgraph`.

- 6 Build the `PlotCSApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.
  - a The `PlotCSApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `PlotCSApp.csproj` in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **PlotCSApp.csproj** > **Open Outside MATLAB**.
  - b Add a reference to the `MWArray` component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`. See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.
  - c Add or, if necessary, fix the location of a reference to the `PlotComp` component which you built in a previous step. (The component, `PlotComp.dll`, is in the `\PlotExample\PlotComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 7 Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.



---

## Passing Variable Arguments

---

**Note** This example is similar to “Simple Plot Example” on page 4-2, except that the MATLAB function to be encapsulated takes a variable number of arguments instead of just one.

---

The purpose of the example is to show you the following:

- How to use the builder to convert a MATLAB function, `drawgraph`, which takes a variable number of arguments, to a method of a .NET class (`Plotter`) and wrap the class in a .NET component (`VarArgComp`). The `drawgraph` function (which can be called as a method of the `Plotter` class) displays a plot of the input parameters.
- How to access the component in a C# application (`VarArgApp.cs`) by instantiating the `Plotter` class and using `MWArray` to represent data.

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- How to build and run the `VarArgDemoApp` application, using the Visual Studio .NET development environment.

### Step-by-Step Procedure

- 1 If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:
  - a Copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your work folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\VarArgExample
```

- b At the MATLAB command prompt, `cd` to the new `VarArgExample` subfolder in your work folder.
- 2 Write the MATLAB functions as you would any MATLAB function.

The code for the functions in this example is as follows:

### **drawgraph.m**

```
function [xyCoords] = DrawGraph(colorSpec, varargin)
...
    numVarArgIn= length(varargin);
    xyCoords= zeros(numVarArgIn, 2);

    for idx = 1:numVarArgIn
        xCoord = varargin{idx}(1);
        yCoord = varargin{idx}(2);

        x(idx) = xCoord;
        y(idx) = yCoord;

        xyCoords(idx,1) = xCoord;
        xyCoords(idx,2) = yCoord;
    end

    xmin = min(0, min(x));
    ymin = min(0, min(y));

    axis([xmin fix(max(x))+3 ymin fix(max(y))+3])

    plot(x, y, 'color', colorSpec);
```

### **extractcoords.m**

```
function [varargout] = ExtractCoords(coords)
%EXTRACTCOORDS Extracts a variable number of two element x and y
% coordinate vectors from a two column array
% [VARARGOUT] = EXTRACTCOORDS(COORDS) Extracts x,y coordinates
% from a two column array
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.

% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
```

```

% $Revision: 1.1.4.55 $ $Date: 2009/11/19 01:06:57 $

for idx = 1:nargout
    varargout{idx}= coords(idx,:);
end
    
```

This code is already in your work folder in /VarArgExample/VarArgComp/.

- 3** While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool dialog box:

```
deploytool
```

- 4** Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	VarArgComp
Class Name	Plotter
File to compile	extractcoords.m drawgraph.m

- 5** Write source code for an application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in VarArgExample\VarArgCSApp\VarArgApp.cs.

The program listing is shown here.

### **VarArgApp.cs**

```

// *****
//
//VarArgApp.cs
//
// This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
// with a variable number of input and output arguments.
//
// Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
//
// *****
    
```

```
using System;

using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;

using VarArgComp;

namespace MathWorks.Examples.VarArgApp
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This application demonstrates how to call components having methods with varargin/vargout arguments.
    /// </summary>
    class VarArgApp
    {
        #region MAIN

        /// <summary>
        /// The main entry point for the application.
        /// </summary>
        [STAThread]
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize the input data
            MWNumericArray colorSpec= new double[]{0.9, 0.0, 0.0};
            MWNumericArray data= new MWNumericArray(new int[],>{{1,2},{2,4},{3,6},{4,8},{5,10}});
            MWArray[] coords= null;

            try
            {
                // Create a new plotter object
                Plotter plotter= new Plotter();

                //Extract a variable number of two element x and y coordinate vectors from the data array
                coords= plotter.extractcoords(5, data);

                // Draw a graph using the specified color to connect the variable number of input coordinates.
                // Return a two column data array containing the input coordinates.
                data= (MWNumericArray)plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords[0], coords[1], coords[2],coords[3], coords[4]);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        Console.WriteLine("result=\n{0}", data);

        Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application

        // Note: You can also pass in the coordinate array directly.
        data= (MWNumericArray)plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords);

        Console.WriteLine("result=\n{0}", data);

        Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }
}

#endregion
}
}

```

The program does the following:

- Initializes three arrays (colorSpec, data, and coords) using the MWArray class library
- Creates a Plotter object
- Calls the extracoords and drawgraph methods
- Uses MWNumericArray to represent the data needed by the methods
- Uses a try-catch block to catch and handle any exceptions

The following statements are alternative ways to call the drawgraph method:

```

data= (MWNumericArray)plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec,
                                         coords[0], coords[1], coords[2],coords[3], coords[4]);
...

```

```
data= (MWNumericArray)plotter.drawgraph((MWArray)colorSpec, coords);
```

- 6 Build the VarArgApp application using Visual Studio .NET.
  - a The VarArgCSApp folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking VarArgCSApp.csproj in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **VarArgCSApp.csproj** > **Open Outside MATLAB**.
  - b Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework\_version\mwarray.dll*. See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.
  - c Add or, if necessary, fix the location of a reference to the VarArgComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, VarArgComp.dll, is in the *\VarArgExample\VarArgComp\x86\v2.0\debug\distrib* subfolder of your work area.)
- 7 Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## Spectral Analysis Example

In this section...
“Purpose” on page 4-13
“Procedure” on page 4-15

### Purpose

The purpose of the example is to show you the following:

- How to use the MATLAB Builder NE product to create a component (SpectraComp) containing more than one class
- How to access the component in a C# application (SpectraApp.cs), including use of the MWArray class hierarchy to represent data

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the MWArray class hierarchy, see the MWArray Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- How to build and run the application, using the Visual Studio .NET development environment

The component SpectraComp analyzes a signal and graphs the result. The class, SignalAnalyzer, performs a fast Fourier transform (FFT) on an input data array. A method of this class, computefft, returns the results of that FFT as two output arrays—an array of frequency points and the power spectral density. The second class, Plotter, graphs the returned data using the plotfft method. These two methods, computefft and plotfft, encapsulate MATLAB functions.

The computefft method computes the FFT and power spectral density of the input data and computes a vector of frequency points based on the length of the data entered and the sampling interval. The plotfft method plots the FFT data and the power spectral density in a MATLAB figure window. The MATLAB code for these two methods resides in two MATLAB files, computefft.m and plotfft.m, which can be found in:

*matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\SpectraExample\SpectraComp*

### **computefft.m**

```
function [fftData, freq, powerSpect] = ComputeFFT(data, interval)
%COMPUTEFFT Computes the FFT and power spectral density.
% [FFTDATA, FREQ, POWERSPECT] = COMPUTEFFT(DATA, INTERVAL)
% Computes the FFT and power spectral density of the input data.
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.
% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
if (isempty(data))
    fftdata = [];
    freq = [];
    powerspect = [];
    return;
end
if (interval <= 0)
    error('Sampling interval must be greater than zero');
    return;
end
fftData = fft(data);
freq = (0:length(fftData)-1)/(length(fftData)*interval);
powerSpect = abs(fftData)/(sqrt(length(fftData)));
```

### **plotfft.m**

```
function PlotFFT(fftData, freq, powerSpect)
%PLOTFFT Computes and plots the FFT and power spectral density.
% [FFTDATA, FREQ, POWERSPECT] = PLOTFFT(DATA, INTERVAL)
% Computes the FFT and power spectral density of the input data.
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.
% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
len = length(fftData);
if (len <= 0)
    return;
end
plot(freq(1:floor(len/2)), powerSpect(1:floor(len/2)))
xlabel('Frequency (Hz)'), grid on
```



```
title('Power spectral density')
```

## Procedure

**1** If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:

- a** Copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your work folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\SpectraExample
```

- b** At the MATLAB command prompt, `cd` to the new `SpectraExample` subfolder in your work folder.

**2** Write the MATLAB code that you want to access.

This example uses `computefft.m` and `plotfft.m`, which are already in your work folder in `SpectraExample\SpectraComp`.

**3** While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool window:

```
deploytool
```

**4** Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	SpectraComp
Class Names	Plotter SignalAnalyzer
Files to compile	computefft.m plotfft.m

**5** Write source code for an application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in `SpectraExample\SpectraCSApp\SpectraApp.cs`.

The program listing is shown here.

### SpectraApp.cs

```
// *****  
//  
//SpectraApp.cs  
//  
// This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component  
// with multiple classes.  
//  
// Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.  
//  
// *****  
  
using System;  
  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;  
  
using SpectraComp;  
  
namespace MathWorks.Examples.SpectraApp  
{  
    /// <summary>  
    /// This application computes and plots the power spectral density of an input signal.  
    /// </summary>  
    class SpectraCSApp  
    {  
        #region MAIN  
  
        /// <summary>  
        /// The main entry point for the application.  
        /// </summary>  
        [STAThread]  
        static void Main(string[] args)  
        {  
            try  
            {  
                const double interval= 0.01; // The sampling interval  
                const int numSamples= 1001; // The number of samples
```

```
// Construct input data as  $\sin(2\pi \cdot 15 \cdot t) + (\sin(2\pi \cdot 40 \cdot t))$  plus a
// random signal. Duration= 10; Sampling interval= 0.01
MWNumericArray data= new MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Real, MWNumericType.Double, numSamples);

Random random= new Random();

// Initialize data
for (int idx= 1; idx <= numSamples; idx++)
{
    double t= (idx-1)* interval;

    data[idx]= Math.Sin(2.0*Math.PI*15.0*t) + Math.Sin(2.0*Math.PI*40.0*t) + random.NextDouble();
}

// Create a new signal analyzer object
SignalAnalyzer signalAnalyzer= new SignalAnalyzer();

// Compute the fft and power spectral density for the data array
MWArray[] argsOut= signalAnalyzer.computefft(3, data, interval);

// Print the first twenty elements of each result array
int numElements= 20;

MWNumericArray resultArray= new MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Complex, MWNumericType.Double, numElements);

for (int idx= 1; idx <= numElements; idx++)
{
    resultArray[idx]= ((MWNumericArray)argsOut[0])[idx];
}

Console.WriteLine("FFT:\n{0}\n", resultArray);

for (int idx= 1; idx <= numElements; idx++)
{
    resultArray[idx]= ((MWNumericArray)argsOut[1])[idx];
}

Console.WriteLine("Frequency:\n{0}\n", resultArray);

for (int idx= 1; idx <= numElements; idx++)
```

```
        {
            resultArray[idx]= ((MWNumericArray)argsOut[2])[idx];
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Power Spectral Density:\n{0}", resultArray);

        // Create a new plotter object
        Plotter plotter= new Plotter();

        // Plot the fft and power spectral density for the data array
        plotter.plotfft(argsOut[0], argsOut[1], argsOut[2]);

        Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }
}

#endregion
}
```

The program does the following:

- Constructs an input array with values representing a random signal with two sinusoids at 15 and 40 Hz embedded inside of it
- Creates an `MWNumericArray` array that contains the data
- Instantiates a `SignalAnalyzer` object
- Calls the `computefft` method, which computes the FFT, frequency, and the spectral density
- Instantiates a `Plotter` object
- Calls the `plotfft` method, which plots the data
- Uses a `try/catch` block to handle exceptions

The following statement

```
MWNumericArray data= new MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Real,  
MWNumericType.Double, numSamples);
```

shows how to use the MWArray class library to construct a MWNumericArray that is used as method input to the computefft function.

The following statement

```
SignalAnalyzer signalAnalyzer = new SignalAnalyzer();
```

creates an instance of the class SignalAnalyzer, and the following statement

```
MWArray[] argsOut= signalAnalyzer.computefft(3, data, interval);
```

calls the method computefft.

- 6** Build the SpectraApp application using Visual Studio .NET.
  - a** The SpectraCSApp folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking SpectraCSApp.csproj in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **SpectraCSApp.csproj** > **Open Outside MATLAB**.
  - b** Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework\_version\mwarray.dll*. See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.
  - c** If necessary, add (or fix the location of) a reference to the SpectraComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, SpectraComp.dll, is in the *\SpectraExample\SpectraComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib* subfolder of your work area.)
- 7** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## Matrix Math Example

**In this section...**

“Purpose” on page 4-20

“Procedure” on page 4-21

“MATLAB Functions to Be Encapsulated” on page 4-26

“Understanding the MatrixMath Program” on page 4-27

### Purpose

The purpose of the example is to show you the following:

- How to assign more than one MATLAB function to a component class
- How to access the component in a C# application (`MatrixMathApp.cs`) by instantiating `Factor` and using the `MWArray` class library to handle data conversion

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- How to build and run the `MatrixMathApp` application, using the Visual Studio .NET development environment

This example builds a .NET component to perform matrix math. The example creates a program that performs Cholesky, LU, and QR factorizations on a simple tridiagonal matrix (finite difference matrix) with the following form:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

You supply the size of the matrix on the command line, and the program constructs the matrix and performs the three factorizations. The original matrix and the results are printed to standard output. You may optionally perform the calculations using a sparse matrix by specifying the string "sparse" as the second parameter on the command line.

## Procedure

- 1 If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:
  - a Copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your work folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\MatrixMathExample
```

- b At the MATLAB command prompt, `cd` to the new `MatrixMathExample` subfolder in your work folder.
- 2 Write the MATLAB functions as you would any MATLAB function.

The code for the `cholesky`, `ludcomp`, and `qrdecomp` functions is already in your work folder in `MatrixMathExample\MatrixMathComp\`.

- 3 While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool:

```
deploytool
```

- 4 Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	<code>MatrixMathComp</code>
Class Name	<code>Factor</code>
Files to compile	<code>cholesky.m</code> <code>ludcomp.m</code> <code>qrdecomp.m</code>

- 5 Write source code for an application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in  
MatrixMathExample\MatrixMathCSApp\MatrixMathApp.cs.

The program listing is shown here.

### **MatrixMathApp.cs**

```
// *****  
//  
// MatrixMathApp.css  
// This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component  
// that returns multiple results and optionally uses sparse matrices for  
// arguments.  
// Copyright 2001-2009 The MathWorks, Inc.  
//  
// *****  
  
using System;  
  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;  
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;  
  
using MatrixMathComp;  
  
namespace MathWorks.Examples.MatrixMath  
{  
    /// <summary>  
    /// This application computes cholesky, LU, and QR factorizations of a finite difference matrix of order N.  
    /// The order is passed into the application on the command line.  
    /// </summary>  
    /// <remarks>  
    /// Command Line Arguments:  
    /// <newpara></newpara>  
    /// args[0] - Matrix order(N)  
    /// <newpara></newpara>  
    /// args[1] - (optional) sparse; Use a sparse matrix  
    /// </remarks>  
    class MatrixMathApp  
    {  
        #region MAIN
```



```
/// <summary>
/// The main entry point for the application.
/// </summary>
[STAThread]
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    bool makeSparse= true;
    int matrixOrder= 4;

    MWNumericArray matrix= null; // The matrix to factor

    MWArray argOut= null; // Stores single factorization result
    MWArray[] argsOut= null; // Stores multiple factorization results

    try
    {
        // If no argument specified, use defaults
        if (0 != args.Length)
        {
            // Convert matrix order
            matrixOrder= Int32.Parse(args[0]);

            if (0 >= matrixOrder)
            {
                throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException("matrixOrder", matrixOrder,
                    "Must enter a positive integer for the matrix order(N)");
            }

            makeSparse= ((1 < args.Length) && (args[1].Equals("sparse")));
        }

        // Create the test matrix. If the second argument is "sparse", create a sparse matrix.
        matrix= (makeSparse)
            ? MWNumericArray.MakeSparse(matrixOrder, matrixOrder, MWArrayComplexity.Real, (matrixOrder+(2*(matrixOrder-1))))
            : new MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Real, MWNumericType.Double, matrixOrder, matrixOrder);

        // Initialize the test matrix
        for (int rowIdx= 1; rowIdx <= matrixOrder; rowIdx++)
            for (int colIdx= 1; colIdx <= matrixOrder; colIdx++)
```

```
        if (rowIdx == colIdx)
            matrix[rowIdx, colIdx]= 2.0;
        else if ((colIdx == rowIdx+1) || (colIdx == rowIdx-1))
            matrix[rowIdx, colIdx]= -1.0;

        // Create a new factor object
        Factor factor= new Factor();

        // Print the test matrix
        Console.WriteLine("Test Matrix:\n{0}\n", matrix);

        // Compute and print the cholesky factorization using the single output syntax
        argOut= factor.cholesky((MArray)matrix);

        Console.WriteLine("Cholesky Factorization:\n{0}\n", argOut);

        // Compute and print the LU factorization using the multiple output syntax
        argsOut= factor.ludecomp(2, matrix);

        Console.WriteLine("LU Factorization:\nL Matrix:\n{0}\nU Matrix:\n{1}\n", argsOut[0], argsOut[1]);

        MNumericArray.DisposeArray(argsOut);

        // Compute and print the QR factorization
        argsOut= factor.qrdecomp(2, matrix);

        Console.WriteLine("QR Factorization:\nQ Matrix:\n{0}\nR Matrix:\n{1}\n", argsOut[0], argsOut[1]);

        Console.ReadLine();
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
    }

    finally
    {
        // Free native resources
        if (null != (object)matrix) matrix.Dispose();
    }
}
```

```

        if (null != (object)argout) argout.Dispose();

        MWNumericArray.DisposeArray(argsOut);
    }
}

#endregion
}
}

```

The statement

```
Factor factor= new Factor();
```

creates an instance of the class `Factor`.

The following statements call the methods that encapsulate the MATLAB functions:

```

argout= factor.cholesky((MWArray)matrix);
...
argsOut= factor.ludecomp(2, matrix);
...
argsOut= factor.qrdecomp(2, matrix);
...

```

---

**Note** See “Understanding the MatrixMath Program” on page 4-27 for more details about the structure of this program.

---

- 6 Build the `MatrixMathApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.
  - a The `MatrixMathCSApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `MatrixMathCSApp.csproj` in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **MatrixMathCSApp.csproj > Open Outside MATLAB**.
  - b Add a reference to the `MWArray` component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version`

`\mwwarray.dll`. See “Supported Microsoft .NET Framework Versions” on page 1-4 for a list of supported framework versions.

- c If necessary, add (or fix the location of) a reference to the `MatrixMathComp` component which you built in a previous step. (The component, `MatrixMathComp.dll`, is in the `\MatrixMathExample\MatrixMathComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)

**7** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## MATLAB Functions to Be Encapsulated

The following code defines the MATLAB functions used in the example.

### cholesky.m

```
function [L] = Cholesky(A)
%CHOLESKY Cholesky factorization of A.
% L= CHOLESKY(A) returns the Cholesky factorization of A.
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.

% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
% $Revision: 1.1.4.55 $ $Date: 2009/11/19 01:06:57 $

L = chol(A);
```

### ludecomp.m

```
function [L,U] = LUdecomp(A)
%LUDECOMP LU factorization of A.
% [L,U]= LUDECOMP(A) returns the LU factorization of A.
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.

% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
% $Revision: 1.1.4.55 $ $Date: 2009/11/19 01:06:57 $

[L,U] = lu(A);
```

## qrdecomp.m

```
function [Q,R] = QRDecomp(A)
%QRDECOMP QR factorization of A.
% [Q,R]= QRDECOMP(A) returns the QR factorization of A.
% This file is used as an example for the .NET Builder
% Language product.

% Copyright 2001-2003 The MathWorks, Inc.
% $Revision: 1.1.4.55 $ $Date: 2009/11/19 01:06:57 $

[Q,R] = qr(A);
```

## Understanding the MatrixMath Program

The MatrixMath program takes one or two arguments from the command line. The first argument is converted to the integer order of the test matrix. If the string `sparse` is passed as the second argument, a sparse matrix is created to contain the test array. The Cholesky, LU, and QR factorizations are then computed and the results are displayed.

The main method has three parts:

- The first part sets up the input matrix, creates a new factor object, and calls the `cholesky`, `ludcomp`, and `qrdecomp` methods. This part is executed inside of a `try` block. This is done so that if an exception occurs during execution, the corresponding `catch` block will be executed.
- The second part is the `catch` block. The code prints a message to standard output to let the user know about the error that has occurred.
- The third part is a `finally` block to manually clean up native resources before exiting.

---

**Note** This optional as the garbage collector will automatically clean-up resources for you.

---

# Phonebook Example

In this section...
“Purpose” on page 4-28
“Procedure” on page 4-28

## Purpose

The `makephone` function takes a structure array as an input, modifies it, and supplies the modified array as an output.

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` class library link on the product roadmap, under “Documentation Set”.

---

## Procedure

- 1 If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:
  - a Copy the following folder that ships with MATLAB to your work folder:  

```
matlabroot\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\PhoneBookExample
```
  - b At the MATLAB command prompt, `cd` to the new `PhoneBookExample` subfolder in your work folder.
- 2 Write the `makephone` function as you would any MATLAB function.

The following code defines the `makephone` function:

```
function book = makephone(friends)
%MAKEPHONE Add a structure to a phonebook structure
% BOOK = MAKEPHONE(FRIENDS) adds a field to its input structure.
% The new field EXTERNAL is based on the PHONE field of the original.
% Copyright 2006-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.

book = friends;
```

```

for i = 1:numel(friends)
    numberStr = num2str(book(i).phone);
    book(i).external = ['(508) 555-' numberStr];
end

```

This code is already in your work folder in  
PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookComp\makephone.m.

- 3 While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool:

```
deploytool
```

- 4 Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	PhoneBookComp
Class Name	Phonebook
File to compile	makephone.m

- 5 Write source code for an application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in  
*matlabroot*\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\  
PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookCSApp\PhoneBookApp.cs.

The program defines a structure array containing names and phone numbers, modifies it using a MATLAB function, and displays the resulting structure array.

The program listing is shown here.

### PhoneBookApp.cs

```

// *****
//
// PhoneBookApp.cs
//
// This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a simple

```

```
// component that makes use of MATLAB structures as function arguments.
//
// Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
//
// *****

/* Necessary package imports */
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;
using PhoneBookComp;

namespace MathWorks.Examples.PhoneBookApp
{
    //
    // This class demonstrates the use of the MWStructArray class
    //
    class PhoneBookApp
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            PhoneBook thePhonebook = null; /* Stores deployment class instance */
            MWStructArray friends= null; /* Sample input data */
            MWArray[] result= null; /* Stores the result */
            MWStructArray book= null; /* Output data extracted from result */

            /* Create the new deployment object */
            thePhonebook= new PhoneBook();

            /* Create an MWStructArray with two fields */
            String[] myFieldNames= { "name", "phone" };
            friends= new MWStructArray(2, 2, myFieldNames);

            /* Populate struct with some sample data --- friends and phone number extensions */
            friends["name", 1]= new MWCharArray("Jordan Robert");
            friends["phone", 1]= 3386;
            friends["name", 2]= new MWCharArray("Mary Smith");
            friends["phone", 2]= 3912;
            friends["name", 3]= new MWCharArray("Stacy Flora");
        }
    }
}
```



```
friends["phone", 3]= 3238;
friends["name", 4]= new MWCharArray("Harry Alpert");
friends["phone", 4]= 3077;

/* Show some of the sample data */
Console.WriteLine("Friends: ");
Console.WriteLine(friends.ToString());

/* Pass it to an MATLAB function that determines external phone number */
result= thePhonebook.makephone(1, friends);
book= (MWStructArray)result[0];

Console.WriteLine("Result: ");
Console.WriteLine(book.ToString());

/* Extract some data from the returned structure */
Console.WriteLine("Result record 2:");

Console.WriteLine(book["name", 2]);
Console.WriteLine(book["phone", 2]);
Console.WriteLine(book["external", 2]);

/* Print the entire result structure using the helper function below */
Console.WriteLine("");
Console.WriteLine("Entire structure:");

DispStruct(book);

Console.ReadLine();
}

public static void DispStruct(MWStructArray arr)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Number of Elements: " + arr.NumberOfElements);

    int[] dims= arr.Dimensions;

    Console.Write("Dimensions: " + dims[0]);

    for (int idx= 1; idx < dims.Length; idx++)
```

```
{
    Console.WriteLine("-by-" + dims[idx]);
}

Console.WriteLine("\nNumber of Fields: " + arr.NumberOfFields);
Console.WriteLine("Standard MATLAB view:");
Console.WriteLine(arr.ToString());

Console.WriteLine("Walking structure:");

string[] fieldNames= arr.FieldNames;

for (int element= 1; element <= arr.NumberOfElements; element++)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Element " + element);

    for (int field= 0; field < arr.NumberOfFields; field++)
    {
        MArray fieldVal= arr[arr.FieldNames[field], element];

        /* Recursively print substructures, give string display of other classes */
        if (fieldVal.GetType() == typeof(MWStructArray))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("    " + fieldNames[field] + ": nested structure:");
            Console.WriteLine("+++ Begin of \" + fieldNames[field] + "\" nested structure");
            DispStruct((MWStructArray)fieldVal);
            Console.WriteLine("+++ End of \" + fieldNames[field] + "\" nested structure");
        }

        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("    " + fieldNames[field] + ": ");
            Console.WriteLine(fieldVal.ToString());
        }
    }
}
}
```

The program does the following:

- Creates a structure array, using `MWStructArray` to represent the example phonebook data.
  - Instantiates the `Phonebook` class as the `thePhonebook` object, as shown:  
`thePhonebook = new phonebook();`
  - Calls the `makephone` method to create a modified copy of the structure by adding an additional field, as shown:  
`result = thePhonebook.makephone(1, friends);`
- 6** Build the `thePhoneBookCSApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.
- a** The `PhoneBookCSApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `PhoneBookCSApp.csproj` in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **PhoneBookCSApp.csproj > Open Outside MATLAB.**
  - b** Add a reference to the `MWArray` component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
  - c** If necessary, add (or fix the location of) a reference to the `PhoneBookComp` component which you built in a previous step. (The component, `PhoneBookComp.dll`, is in the `\PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 7** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

The `PhoneBookApp` program should display the output:

```

Friends:
2x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    phone
Result:
2x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    phone
    external

```

Result record 2:

Mary Smith  
3912  
(508) 555-3912

Entire structure:

Number of Elements: 4  
Dimensions: 2-by-2  
Number of Fields: 3  
Standard MATLAB view:  
2x2 struct array with fields:  
    name  
    phone  
    external

Walking structure:

Element 1  
    name: Jordan Robert  
    phone: 3386  
    external: (508) 555-3386  
Element 2  
    name: Mary Smith  
    phone: 3912  
    external: (508) 555-3912  
Element 3  
    name: Stacy Flora  
    phone: 3238  
    external: (508) 555-3238  
Element 4  
    name: Harry Alpert  
    phone: 3077  
    external: (508) 555-3077

# Sample Applications (Microsoft Visual Basic .NET)

---

The sample applications that follow use the same components as those developed in “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9 and Chapter 4, “Sample Applications (C#)”. Instead of C#, the following applications are written in Microsoft Visual Basic .NET. For details about creating the components, see the procedures noted in the beginning of the description for each application. Then follow the steps shown here to use the component in a Visual Basic application.

- “Magic Square Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-3
- “Create Plot Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-7
- “Variable Arguments Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-11
- “Spectral Analysis Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-15
- “Matrix Math Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-20
- “Phonebook Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-25

---

**Note** The examples for the MATLAB Builder NE product are in *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VSversionnumber*, where *matlabroot* is the folder where the MATLAB product is installed and *VSversionnumber* specifies the version of Microsoft Visual Studio .NET you are using (currently VS8). If you have Microsoft Visual Studio .NET installed, you can load projects for all the examples by opening the following solution:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VSversionnumber\DotNetExamples.sln
```

---

## Magic Square Example (Visual Basic)

To create the component for this example, see the first several steps in “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9. After you build the `MagicSquareComp` component, you can build an application that accesses the component as follows.

- 1 For this example, the application is `MagicSquareApp.vb`.

You can find `MagicSquareApp.vb` in:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET
\MagicSquareExample\MagicSquareVApp
```

The program listing is as follows.

### MagicSquareApp.vb

```
' *****
'
' MagicSquareApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a simple
' component returning a magic square and how to convert MWNumericArray types
' to native .NET types.
'
' Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

Imports System
Imports System.Reflection
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays

Imports MagicSquareComp

Namespace MathWorks.Examples.MagicSquare

    <summary>
```

```
' The MagicSquareApp class computes a magic square of the user specified size.
' </summary>
' <remarks>
' args[0] - a positive integer representing the array size.
' </remarks>
Class MagicSquareApp

#Region " MAIN "

' <summary>
' The main entry point for the application.
' </summary>
Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)

    Dim arraySize As MWNumericArray = Nothing
    Dim magicSquare As MWNumericArray = Nothing

    Try
        ' Get user specified command line arguments or set default
        If (0 <> args.Length) Then
            arraySize = New MWNumericArray(Int32.Parse(args(0)), False)
        Else
            arraySize = New MWNumericArray(4, False)
        End If

        ' Create the magic square object
        Dim magic As MagicSquareClass = New MagicSquareClass

        ' Compute the magic square and print the result
        magicSquare = magic.makesquare(arraySize)

        Console.WriteLine("Magic square of order {0}{1}{2}{3}", arraySize, Chr(10), Chr(10), magicSquare)

        ' Convert the magic square array to a two dimensional native double array
        Dim nativeArray(,) As Double = CType(magicSquare.ToArray(MWArrayComponent.Real), Double(,))

        Console.WriteLine("{0}Magic square as native array:{1}", Chr(10), Chr(10))

        ' Display the array elements:
        Dim index As Integer = arraySize.ToScalarInteger()
```



```
For i As Integer = 0 To index - 1
    For j As Integer = 0 To index - 1
        Console.WriteLine("Element({0},{1})= {2}", i, j, nativeArray(i, j))
    Next j
Next i

Console.ReadLine() 'Wait for user to exit application

Catch exception As Exception

    Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)

End Try
End Sub
#End Region

End Class

End Namespace
```

The application you build from this source file does the following:

- Lets you pass a dimension for the magic square from the command line.
- Converts the dimension argument to a MATLAB integer scalar value.
- Declares variables of type `MWNumericArray` to handle data required by the encapsulated `makesquare` function.

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray Class Library Reference` (available online only).

---

- Creates an instance of the `MagicSquare` class named `magic`.
- Calls the `makesquare` method, which belongs to the `magic` object. The `makesquare` method generates the magic square using the MATLAB `magic` function.

- Displays the array elements on the command line.
- 2** Build the application using Visual Studio .NET.
    - a** The MagicSquareVApp folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for each example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET for this example by double-clicking MagicSquareVApp.vbproj in Windows Explorer.
    - b** If necessary, add a reference to the MWArray component, which is *matlabroot\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework\_version\mwarray.dll*.
    - c** If necessary, add a reference to the MagicSquareComp component, which is in the `distrib` subfolder.
    - d** Build and run the application in Visual Studio.NET.

## Create Plot Example (Visual Basic)

To create the component for this example, see “Simple Plot Example” on page 4-2. Then create a Visual Basic application as follows:

- 1 Review the sample application for this example in *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VSversionnumber\NET\PlotExample\PlotVBAApp\PlotApp.vb*.

The program listing is shown here.

### PlotApp.vb

```
' *****
'
' PlotApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
' that displays a MATLAB figure window.
'
' Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

Imports System

Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays

Imports PlotComp

Namespace MathWorks.Examples.PlotApp

    ' <summary>
    ' This application demonstrates plotting x-y data by graphing a simple
    ' parabola into a MATLAB figure window.
    ' </summary>
    Class PlotDemoApp
```

```
#Region " MAIN "  
  
    ' <summary>  
    ' The main entry point for the application.  
    ' </summary>  
    Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)  
        Try  
            Const numPoints As Integer = 10 ' Number of points to plot  
            Dim idx As Integer  
            Dim plotValues(,) As Double = New Double(1, numPoints - 1) {}  
            Dim coords As MWNumericArray  
  
            'Plot 5x vs x^2  
            For idx = 0 To numPoints - 1  
                Dim x As Double = idx + 1  
                plotValues(0, idx) = x * 5  
                plotValues(1, idx) = x * x  
            Next idx  
  
            coords = New MWNumericArray(plotValues)  
  
            ' Create a new plotter object  
            Dim plotter As Plotter = New Plotter  
  
            ' Plot the values  
            plotter.drawgraph(coords)  
  
            Console.ReadLine() ' Wait for user to exit application  
  
            Catch exception As Exception  
                Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)  
            End Try  
        End Sub  
    #End Region  
  
End Class  
End Namespace
```

The program does the following:

- Creates two arrays of double values
- Creates a `Plotter` object
- Calls the `drawgraph` method to plot the equation using the MATLAB `plot` function
- Uses `MWNumericArray` to handle the data needed by the `drawgraph` method to plot the equation

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- Uses a try-catch block to catch and handle any exceptions

The statement

```
Dim plotter As Plotter = New Plotter
```

creates an instance of the `Plotter` class, and the statement

```
plotter.drawgraph(coords)
```

calls the method `drawgraph`.

## 2 Build the `PlotApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.

- The `PlotVApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `PlotVApp.vbproj` in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **PlotVApp.vbproj** > **Open Outside MATLAB**.
- Add a reference to the `MWArray` component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
- If necessary, add (or fix the location of) a reference to the `PlotComp` component which you built in a

previous step. (The component, PlotComp.dll, is in the  
\\PlotExample\PlotComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib subfolder of your  
work area.)

- 3** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## Variable Arguments Example (Visual Basic)

To create the component for this example, see “Passing Variable Arguments” on page 4-7. Then create a Microsoft Visual Basic application as follows:

- 1 Review the sample application for this example in *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\VarArgExample\VarArgVBAApp\VarArgApp.vb*.

The program listing is shown here.

### VarArgApp.vb

```
' *****
'
' VarArgApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
' with a variable number of input and output arguments.
'
' Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

Imports System

Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays

Imports VarArgComp

Namespace MathWorks.Demo.VarArgDemoApp

    <summary>
    ' This application demonstrates how to call components having methods with varargin/vargout arguments.
    </summary>
    Class VarArgDemoApp
```

```
#Region " MAIN "  
  
' <summary>  
' The main entry point for the application.  
' </summary>  
Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)  
  
    ' Initialize the input data  
    Dim colorSpec As MWNumericArray = New MWNumericArray(New Double() {0.9, 0.0, 0.0})  
    Dim data As MWNumericArray = New MWNumericArray(New Integer(,) {{1, 2}, {2, 4}, {3, 6}, {4, 8}, {5, 10}})  
    Dim coords() As MWArray = Nothing  
  
    Try  
  
        ' Create a new plotter object  
        Dim plotter As Plotter = New Plotter  
  
        'Extract a variable number of two element x and y coordinate vectors from the data array  
        coords = plotter.extractcoords(5, data)  
  
        ' Draw a graph using the specified color to connect the variable number of input coordinates.  
        ' Return a two column data array containing the input coordinates.  
        data = CType(plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords(0), coords(1), coords(2), coords(3), coords(4)), _  
                    MWNumericArray)  
  
        Console.WriteLine("result={0}{1}", Chr(10), data)  
  
        Console.ReadLine() ' Wait for user to exit application  
  
        ' Note: You can also pass in the coordinate array directly.  
        data = CType(plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords), MWNumericArray)  
  
        Console.WriteLine("result=\{0}{1}", Chr(10), data)  
  
        Console.ReadLine() ' Wait for user to exit application  
  
    Catch exception As Exception  
        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)  
    End Try  
  
End Sub
```



```

        End Sub
    #End Region

    End Class
End Namespace

```

The program does the following:

- Initializes three arrays (`colorSpec`, `data`, and `coords`) using the `MWArray` class library
- Creates a `Plotter` object
- Calls the `extracoords` and `drawgraph` methods
- Uses `MWNumericArray` to handle the data needed by the methods

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

- Uses a `try-catch-finally` block to catch and handle any exceptions

The following statements are alternative ways to call the `drawgraph` method:

```

data = CType(plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords(0), coords(1), coords(2), coords(3), coords(4)), MWNumericArray)
...
data = CType(plotter.drawgraph(colorSpec, coords), MWNumericArray)

```

## 2 Build the `VarArgApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.

- The `VarArgVBAApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `VarArgVBAApp.vbproj` in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **VarArgVBAApp.vbproj** > **Open Outside MATLAB**.

- b** Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
  - c** If necessary, add (or update the location of) a reference to the VarArgComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, VarArgComp.dll, is in the `\VarArgExample\VarArgComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 3** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## Spectral Analysis Example (Visual Basic)

To create the component for this example, see the first few steps of the “Spectral Analysis Example” on page 4-13. Then create a Microsoft Visual Basic application as follows:

- 1 Review the sample application for this example in *matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\SpectraVBAApp\SpectraApp.vb*.

The program listing is shown here.

### SpectraApp.vb

```
' *****
'
'SpectraApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
' with multiple classes.
'
' Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

Imports System

Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays

Imports SpectraComp

Namespace MathWorks.Examples.SpectraApp

    ' <summary>
    ' This application computes and plots the power spectral density of an input signal.
    ' </summary>
    Class SpectraDemoApp
```

```
#Region " MAIN "

' <summary>
' The main entry point for the application.
' </summary>
Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)
    Try
        Const interval As Double = 0.01 ' The sampling interval
        Const numSamples As Integer = 1001 ' The number of samples

        ' Construct input data as  $\sin(2\pi \cdot 15 \cdot t) + (\sin(2\pi \cdot 40 \cdot t))$  plus a
        ' random signal. Duration= 10; Sampling interval= 0.01
        Dim data As MWNumericArray = New MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Real,
            MWNumericType.Double, numSamples)

        Dim random As Random = New Random

        ' Initialize data
        Dim t As Double
        Dim idx As Integer
        For idx = 1 To numSamples
            t = (idx - 1) * interval
            data(idx) = New MWNumericArray(Math.Sin(2.0 * Math.PI * 15.0 * t) +
                Math.Sin(2.0 * Math.PI * 40.0 * t) + random.NextDouble())
        Next idx

        ' Create a new signal analyzer object
        Dim signalAnalyzer As SignalAnalyzer = New SignalAnalyzer

        ' Compute the fft and power spectral density for the data array
        Dim argsOut() As MWArray = signalAnalyzer.computefft(3, data,
            MWArray.op_Implicit(interval))

        ' Print the first twenty elements of each result array
        Dim numElements As Integer = 20
        Dim resultArray As MWNumericArray =
            New MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Complex,
                MWNumericType.Double, numElements)

        For idx = 1 To numElements
```

```

        resultArray(idx) = (CType(argsOut(0), MWNumericArray))(idx)
    Next idx

    Console.WriteLine("FFT:{0}{1}{2}", Chr(10), resultArray, Chr(10))

    For idx = 1 To numElements
        resultArray(idx) = (CType(argsOut(1), MWNumericArray))(idx)
    Next idx

    Console.WriteLine("Frequency:{0}{1}{2}", Chr(10), resultArray, Chr(10))

    For idx = 1 To numElements
        resultArray(idx) = (CType(argsOut(2), MWNumericArray))(idx)
    Next idx

    Console.WriteLine("Power Spectral Density:{0}{1}{2}", Chr(10), resultArray, Chr(10))

    ' Create a new plotter object
    Dim plotter As Plotter = New Plotter

    ' Plot the fft and power spectral density for the data array
    plotter.plotfft(argsOut(0), argsOut(1), argsOut(2))

    Console.ReadLine() ' Wait for user to exit application

Catch exception As Exception
    Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)

End Try
End Sub
#End Region

End Class
End Namespace

```

The program does the following:

- Constructs an input array with values representing a random signal with two sinusoids at 15 and 40 Hz embedded inside of it

- Uses `MWNumericArray` to handle data conversion

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray Class Library Reference` (available online only).

---

- Instantiates a `SignalAnalyzer` object
- Calls the `computefft` method, which computes the FFT, frequency, and the spectral density
- Instantiates a `Plotter` object
- Calls the `plotfft` method, which plots the data
- Uses a `try/catch` block to handle exceptions

The following statements

```
Dim data As MWNumericArray = New MWNumericArray_  
    (MWArrayComplexity.Real, MWNumericType.Double, numSamples)  
...  
Dim resultArray As MWNumericArray = New MWNumericArray_  
    (MWArrayComplexity.Complex, MWNumericType.Double, numElements)
```

show how to use the `MWArray` class library to construct the necessary data types.

The following statement

```
Dim signalAnalyzer As SignalAnalyzer = New SignalAnalyzer
```

creates an instance of the class `SignalAnalyzer`, and the following statement

```
Dim argsOut() As MWArray = signalAnalyzer.computefft  
    (3, data, MWArray.op_Implicit(interval))
```

calls the method `computefft` and request three outputs.

- 2 Build the `SpectraApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.

- a The SpectraVApp folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking SpectraVApp.vbproj in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **SpectraVApp.vbproj > Open Outside MATLAB**.
  - b Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
  - c If necessary, add (or update the location of) a reference to the SpectraComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, SpectraComp.dll, is in the `\SpectraExample\SpectraComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 3** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

# Matrix Math Example (Visual Basic)

To create the component for this example, see the first few steps in “Matrix Math Example” on page 4-20. Then create a Microsoft Visual Basic application as follows.

- 1 Review the sample application for this example in:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\MatrixMathExample
\MatrixMathVBApp\MatrixMathApp.vb.
```

The program listing is shown here.

### MatrixMathApp.vb

```
' *****
'
' MatrixMathApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a component
' that returns multiple results and optionally uses sparse matrices for
' arguments.
' Copyright 2001-2009 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

Imports System

Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays

Imports MatrixMathComp

Namespace MathWorks.Demo.MatrixMathApp

    ' <summary>
    ' This application computes cholesky, LU, and QR factorizations of a
    ' finite difference matrix of order N.
    ' The order is passed into the application on the command line.
```



```
' </summary>
' <remarks>
' Command Line Arguments:
' <newpara></newpara>
' args[0] - Matrix order(N)
' <newpara></newpara>
' args[1] - (optional) sparse; Use a sparse matrix
' </remarks>
Class MatrixMathDemoApp
```

```
#Region " MAIN "
```

```
' <summary>
' The main entry point for the application.
' </summary>
Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)

    Dim makeSparse As Boolean = True
    Dim matrixOrder As Integer = 4

    Dim matrix As MWNumericArray = Nothing ' The matrix to factor

    Dim argOut As MWArray = Nothing ' Stores single factorization result
    Dim argsOut() As MWArray = Nothing ' Stores multiple factorization results

    Try
        ' If no argument specified, use defaults
        If (0 <> args.Length) Then
            'Convert matrix order
            matrixOrder = Int32.Parse(args(0))

            If (0 > matrixOrder) Then
                Throw New ArgumentOutOfRangeException("matrixOrder", matrixOrder, _
                    "Must enter a positive integer for the matrix order(N)")
            End If

            makeSparse = ((1 < args.Length) AndAlso (args(1).Equals("sparse")))
        End If

        ' Create the test matrix. If the second argument is "sparse", create a sparse matrix.
```

```
matrix = IIf(makeSparse, _
MWNumericArray.MakeSparse(matrixOrder, matrixOrder, MWArrayComplexity.Real,
                           (matrixOrder + (2 * (matrixOrder - 1)))), _
New MWNumericArray(MWArrayComplexity.Real, MWNumericType.Double, matrixOrder, matrixOrder))

' Initialize the test matrix
For rowIdx As Integer = 1 To matrixOrder
    For colIdx As Integer = 1 To matrixOrder
        If rowIdx = colIdx Then
            matrix(rowIdx, colIdx) = New MWNumericArray(2.0)
        ElseIf colIdx = rowIdx + 1 Or colIdx = rowIdx - 1 Then
            matrix(rowIdx, colIdx) = New MWNumericArray(-1.0)
        End If
    Next colIdx
Next rowIdx

' Create a new factor object
Dim factor As Factor = New Factor

' Print the test matrix
Console.WriteLine("Test Matrix:{0}{1}{2}", Chr(10), matrix, Chr(10))

' Compute and print the cholesky factorization using the single output syntax
argOut = factor.cholesky(matrix)

Console.WriteLine("Cholesky Factorization:{0}{1}{2}", Chr(10), argOut, Chr(10))

' Compute and print the LU factorization using the multiple output syntax
argsOut = factor.ludecomp(2, matrix)

Console.WriteLine("LU Factorization:{0}L Matrix:{1}{2}{3}U Matrix:{4}{5}{6}", Chr(10), Chr(10),
                 argsOut(0), Chr(10), Chr(10), argsOut(1), Chr(10))

MWNumericArray.DisposeArray(argsOut)

' Compute and print the QR factorization
argsOut = factor.qrdecomp(2, matrix)

Console.WriteLine("QR Factorization:{0}Q Matrix:{1}{2}{3}R Matrix:{4}{5}{6}", Chr(10),
                 Chr(10), argsOut(0), Chr(10), Chr(10), argsOut(1), Chr(10))
```

```

        Console.ReadLine()

    Catch exception As Exception

        Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)

    Finally

        ' Free native resources
        If Not (matrix Is Nothing) Then
            matrix.Dispose()
        End If
        If Not (argOut Is Nothing) Then
            argOut.Dispose()
        End If

        MNNumericArray.DisposeArray(argsOut)
    End Try
End Sub
#End Region
End Class
End Namespace

```

The statement

```
Dim factor As Factor = New Factor
```

creates an instance of the class `Factor`.

The following statements call the methods that encapsulate the MATLAB functions:

```
argOut = factor.cholesky(matrix)
```

```
argsOut = factor.ludecomp(2, matrix)
```

```
...
argsOut = factor.qrdecomp(2, matrix)
```

---

**Note** See “Understanding the MatrixMath Program” on page 4-27 for more details about the structure of this program.

---

- 2 Build the MatrixMathApp application using Visual Studio .NET.
  - a The MatrixMathVApp folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking MatrixMathVApp.vbproj in Windows Explorer. You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **MatrixMathVApp.vbproj > Open Outside MATLAB.**
  - b Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
  - c If necessary, add (or update the location of) a reference to the MatrixMathComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, MatrixMathComp.dll, is in the `\MatrixMathExample\MatrixMathComp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 3 Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

## Phonebook Example (Visual Basic)

### In this section...

“makephone Function” on page 5-25

“Procedure” on page 5-25

### makephone Function

The makephone function takes a structure array as an input, modifies it, and supplies the modified array as an output.

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray` class library link on the product roadmap, under “Documentation Set”.

---

### Procedure

- 1 If you have not already done so, copy the files for this example as follows:
  - a Copy the following folder that ships with MATLAB to your work folder:  

```
matlabroot\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\PhoneBookExample
```
  - b At the MATLAB command prompt, `cd` to the new `PhoneBookExample` subfolder in your work folder.
- 2 Write the makephone function as you would any MATLAB function.

The following code defines the makephone function:

```
function book = makephone(friends)
%MAKEPHONE Add a structure to a phonebook structure
% BOOK = MAKEPHONE(FRIENDS) adds a field to its input structure.
% The new field EXTERNAL is based on the PHONE field of the original.
% This file is used as an example for MATLAB
% Builder for Java.
```

```
% Copyright 2006-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.  
  
book = friends;  
for i = 1:numel(friends)  
    numberStr = num2str(book(i).phone);  
    book(i).external = ['(508) 555-' numberStr];  
end
```

This code is already in your work folder in  
PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookComp\makephone.m.

- 3 While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool window:

```
deploytool
```

- 4 Build the .NET component. See the instructions in “Building Your Component” on page 1-12 for more details. Use the following information:

Project Name	PhoneBookComp
Class Name	phonebook
File to compile	makephone.m

- 5 Write source code for an application that accesses the component.

The sample application for this example is in  
*matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET*  
PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookVApp\PhoneBookApp.vb.

The program defines a structure array containing names and phone numbers, modifies it using a MATLAB function, and displays the resulting structure array.

The program listing is shown here.

### PhoneBookApp.vb

```
' *****  
,
```

```

' PhoneBookApp.vb
'
' This example demonstrates how to use MATLAB Builder NE to build a simple
' component that makes use of MATLAB structures as function arguments.
'
' Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
'
' *****

' Necessary package imports

Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays
Imports PhoneBookComp

'
' getphone class demonstrates the use of the MWStructArray class
'
Public Module PhoneBookVBAApp
    Public Sub Main()
        Dim thePhonebook As phonebook 'Stores deployment class instance
        Dim friends As MWStructArray 'Sample input data
        Dim result As Object() 'Stores the result
        Dim book As MWStructArray 'Output data extracted from result

        ' Create the new deployment object
        thePhonebook = New phonebook()

        ' Create an MWStructArray with two fields
        Dim myFieldNames As String() = {"name", "phone"}
        friends = New MWStructArray(2, 2, myFieldNames)

        ' Populate struct with some sample data --- friends and phone numbers
        friends("name", 1) = New MWCharArray("Jordan Robert")
        friends("phone", 1) = 3386
        friends("name", 2) = New MWCharArray("Mary Smith")
        friends("phone", 2) = 3912
        friends("name", 3) = New MWCharArray("Stacy Flora")
        friends("phone", 3) = 3238
        friends("name", 4) = New MWCharArray("Harry Alpert")
        friends("phone", 4) = 3077
    End Sub
End Module

```

```
' Show some of the sample data
Console.WriteLine("Friends: ")
Console.WriteLine(friends.ToString())

' Pass it to an MATLAB function that determines external phone number
result = thePhonebook.makephone(1, friends)
book = CType(result(0), MWStructArray)
Console.WriteLine("Result: ")
Console.WriteLine(book.ToString())

' Extract some data from the returned structure '
Console.WriteLine("Result record 2:")

Console.WriteLine(book("name", 2))
Console.WriteLine(book("phone", 2))
Console.WriteLine(book("external", 2))

' Print the entire result structure using the helper function below
Console.WriteLine("")
Console.WriteLine("Entire structure:")
dispStruct(book)
End Sub

Sub dispStruct(ByVal arr As MWStructArray)
    Console.WriteLine("Number of Elements: " + arr.NumberOfElements.ToString())
    'int numDims = arr.NumberofDimensions
    Dim dims As Integer() = arr.Dimensions
    Console.WriteLine("Dimensions: " + dims(0).ToString())

    Dim i As Integer
    For i = 1 To dims.Length
        Console.WriteLine("-by-" + dims(i - 1).ToString())
    Next i
    Console.WriteLine("")
    Console.WriteLine("Number of Fields: " + arr.NumberOfFields.ToString())
    Console.WriteLine("Standard MATLAB view:")
    Console.WriteLine(arr.ToString())
    Console.WriteLine("Walking structure:")
```



```

Dim fieldNames As String() = arr.FieldNames

Dim element As Integer
For element = 1 To arr.NumberOfElements
    Console.WriteLine("Element " + element.ToString())
    Dim field As Integer
    For field = 0 To arr.NumberOfFields - 1
        Dim fieldVal As MWArray = arr(arr.FieldNames(field), element)
        ' Recursively print substructures, give string display of other classes
        If (TypeOf fieldVal Is MWStructArray) Then
            Console.WriteLine("    " + fieldNames(field) + ": nested structure:")
            Console.WriteLine("+++ Begin of \" + fieldNames[field] + " \ " nested structure")

            dispStruct(CType(fieldVal, MWStructArray))
            Console.WriteLine("+++ End of \" + fieldNames[field] + " \ " nested structure")
        Else
            Console.Write("    " + fieldNames(field) + ": ")
            Console.WriteLine(fieldVal.ToString())
        End If
    Next field
Next element
End Sub
End Module

```

The program does the following:

- Creates a structure array, using `MWStructArray` to represent the example phonebook data.
  - Instantiates the plotter class as the `thePhonebook` object, as shown:  
`thePhonebook = new phonebook();`
  - Calls the `makephone` method to create a modified copy of the structure by adding an additional field, as shown:  
`result = thePhonebook.makephone(1, friends);`
- 6** Build the `thePhoneBookVBApp` application using Visual Studio .NET.
- ▣ The `PhoneBookVBApp` folder contains a Visual Studio .NET project file for this example. Open the project in Visual Studio .NET by double-clicking `PhoneBookVBApp.csproj` in Windows Explorer.

You can also open it from the MATLAB desktop by right-clicking **PhoneBookVApp.csproj > Open Outside MATLAB**.

- b** Add a reference to the MWArray component, which is `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\architecture\framework_version\mwarray.dll`.
  - c** If necessary, add (or fix the location of) a reference to the PhoneBookVComp component which you built in a previous step. (The component, PhoneBookComp.dll, is in the `\PhoneBookExample\PhoneBookVApp\x86\V2.0\Debug\distrib` subfolder of your work area.)
- 7** Build and run the application in Visual Studio .NET.

The getphone program should display the output:

```
Friends:
2x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    phone
Result:
2x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    phone
    external
Result record 2:
Mary Smith
3912
(508) 555-3912

Entire structure:
Number of Elements: 4
Dimensions: 2-by-2
Number of Fields: 3
Standard MATLAB view:
2x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    phone
    external
Walking structure:
```

## Element 1

name: Jordan Robert  
phone: 3386  
external: (508) 555-3386

## Element 2

name: Mary Smith  
phone: 3912  
external: (508) 555-3912

## Element 3

name: Stacy Flora  
phone: 3238  
external: (508) 555-3238

## Element 4

name: Harry Alpert  
phone: 3077  
external: (508) 555-3077



# Deploying a MATLAB Figure Over the Web Using WebFigures

---

- “About the WebFigures Feature” on page 6-2
- “Before You Use WebFigures” on page 6-3
- “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7
- “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15
- “Upgrading Your WebFigures” on page 6-30
- “Troubleshooting” on page 6-31
- “Logging Levels” on page 6-33

# About the WebFigures Feature

Using the WebFigures feature in MATLAB Builder NE you can display MATLAB figures on a Web site for graphical manipulation by end users. This enables them to use their graphical applications from anywhere on the Web without the need to download MATLAB or other tools that can consume costly resources.

This chapter includes “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7, which guides you through implementing the basic features of WebFigures, and an advanced section to let you customize your configuration depending on differing server architectures.

## Supported Renderers for WebFigures

The MATLAB Builder NE WebFigures feature uses the same renderer used when the figure was originally created by default.

In MATLAB, the renderer is either explicitly specified for a figure or determined by the data being plotted. For more information about supported renderers in MATLAB, see <http://www.mathworks.com/support/tech-notes/1200/1201.html>.

---

**Note** The WebFigures feature does not support the `Painter` renderer due to technical limitations. If this renderer is requested, the `Zbuffer` renderer will be invoked before the data is displayed on the Web page.

---

## Before You Use WebFigures

### In this section...

“Your Role in the .NET WebFigure Deployment Process” on page 6-3

“What You Need to Know to Implement WebFigures” on page 6-5

“Required Products” on page 6-5

“Assumptions About the Examples” on page 6-6

## Your Role in the .NET WebFigure Deployment Process

Depending on your role in your organization, as well as a number of other criteria, you may need to implement either the beginning or the advanced configuration of WebFigures.

The table WebFigures for .NET Deployment Roles, Responsibilities, and Tasks on page 6-3 describes some of the different roles, or jobs, that MATLAB Builder NE users typically perform and which method of configuration they would most likely use when running “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7 and “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15.

### WebFigures for .NET Deployment Roles, Responsibilities, and Tasks

Role	Typical Responsibilities	Tasks
MATLAB programmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understand end-user business requirements and the mathematical models needed to support them.</li> <li>• Write MATLAB code.</li> <li>• Build an executable component with MATLAB tools (usually with support from a .NET programmer).</li> <li>• Package the component for distribution to end users.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Write and deploy MATLAB code, such as that in “Assumptions About the Examples” on page 6-6.</li> </ul>

**WebFigures for .NET Deployment Roles, Responsibilities, and Tasks (Continued)**

<b>Role</b>	<b>Typical Responsibilities</b>	<b>Tasks</b>
.NET programmer (business-service developer or front-end developer)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design and configure the IT environment, architecture, or infrastructure.</li> <li>• Install deployable applications along with the proper version of the MCR.</li> <li>• Create mechanisms for exposing application functionality to the end user.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7 to easily create a graphic, such as a MATLAB figure, that the end user can manipulate over the Web.</li> <li>• Use the “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15 to create a flexible, scalable implementation that can meet a number of varied architectural requirements.</li> </ul>



## What You Need to Know to Implement WebFigures

The following knowledge is assumed when you implement WebFigures for .NET:

- If you are a MATLAB programmer:
  - A basic knowledge of MATLAB
- If you are a .NET programmer:
  - Knowledge of how to build a Web site using Microsoft Visual Studio.
  - Experience deploying MATLAB applications

## Required Products

Install the following products to implement WebFigures for .NET, depending on your role.

<b>MATLAB Programmer</b>	<b>.NET Programmer</b>
MATLAB R2008b or later	Microsoft Visual Studio 2005 or later
MATLAB Compiler	Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 or later
MATLAB Builder NE	MATLAB Compiler Runtime version 7.9 or later

### Assumptions About the Examples

To work with the examples in this chapter:

- Assume the following MATLAB function has been created:

```
function df = getKnot()
    f = figure('Visible','off'); %Create a figure.
                                   %Make sure it isn't visible.
    knot; %Put something into the figure.
    df = webfigure(f); %Give the figure to your function
                                   % and return the result.
    close(f); %Close the figure.
end
```

- Assume that the function `getKnot` has been deployed in a .NET component (using Chapter 1, “Getting Started” for example) with a namespace of `MyComponent.MyComponentClass`.
- Assume the MATLAB Compiler Runtime (MCR) has been installed. If not, refer to “Install the MCR on Target Computers Without MATLAB and Update System Paths” in the MATLAB Compiler documentation.
- If you are running on a system with 64-bit architecture, use the information in “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15 to work with WebFigures unless you are deploying a Web site which is 32-bit only and you have a 32-bit MCR installed.

## Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure

### In this section...

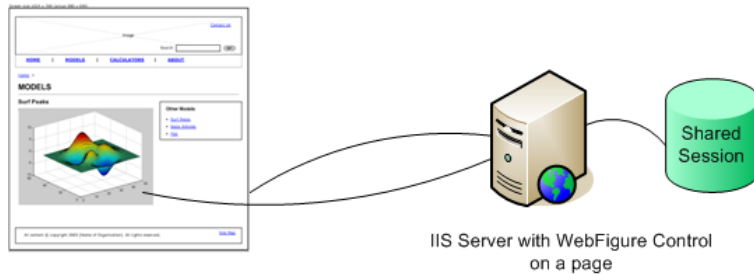
“Overview” on page 6-7

“Procedure” on page 6-7

### Overview

Using Quick Start, both the WebFigure service and the page that has the WebFigure embedded on it reside on a single server. This configuration enables you to quickly drag and drop the WebFigureControl on a Web page.

### Using the WebFigure Control on the Frontend Servers Outside the Firewall



### Procedure

To implement WebFigures for MATLAB Builder NE using the Quick Start approach, do the following. For more information about the Quick Start option, see “About the WebFigures Feature” on page 6-2.

- 1 Start Microsoft Visual Studio.
- 2 Select **File > New > Web Site** to open.
- 3 Select one of the template options and click **OK**.

---

**Caution** Do not select **Empty Web Site** as it is not possible to create a WebFigure using this option.

---

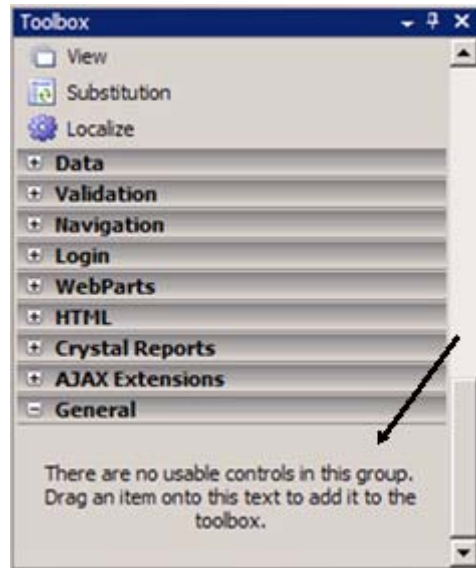
- 4 Add `WebFigureControl` to the Microsoft Visual Studio toolbar by dragging the file `InstallRoot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\arch\v2.0\WebFiguresService.dll`, (where `InstallRoot` is the location of the installed MCR for machines with an installed MCR and `matlabroot` on a MATLAB Builder NE development machine without the MCR installed), on to the Microsoft Visual Studio **Toolbox** toolbar as follows:

---

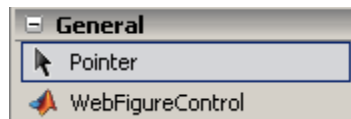
**Note** If you are running on a system with 64-bit architecture, use the information in “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15 to work with WebFigures unless you are deploying a Web site which is 32-bit only and you have a 32-bit MCR installed.

---

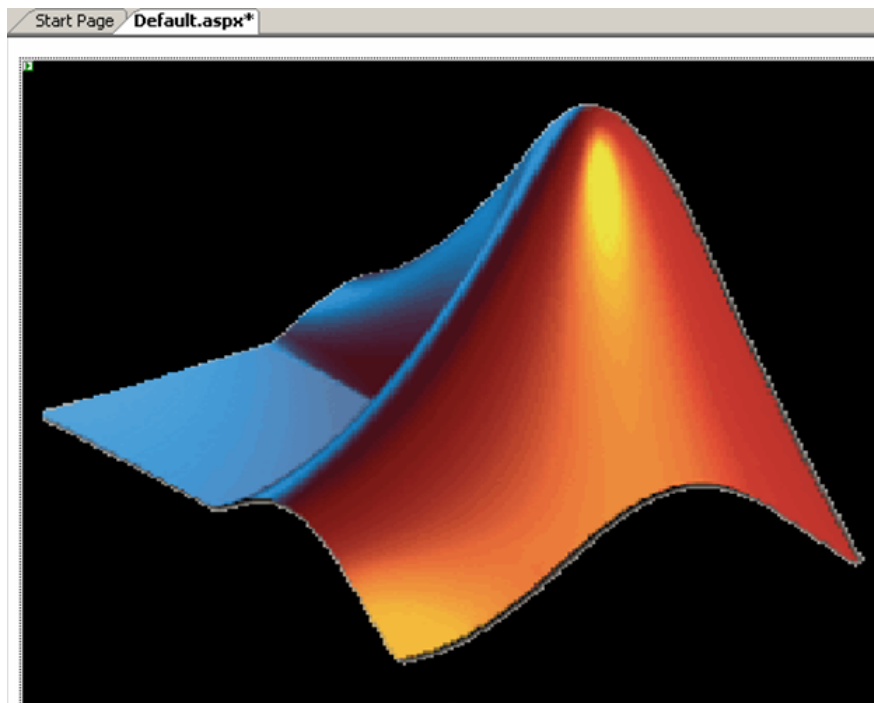
- a Expand the **General** section of the **Toolbox** toolbar.
- b Using your mouse, drag the DLL file to the expanded section, as shown by the arrow:



If you added the control correctly, you will see the following WebFigureControl in the **General** section of the Microsoft Visual Studio toolbar:

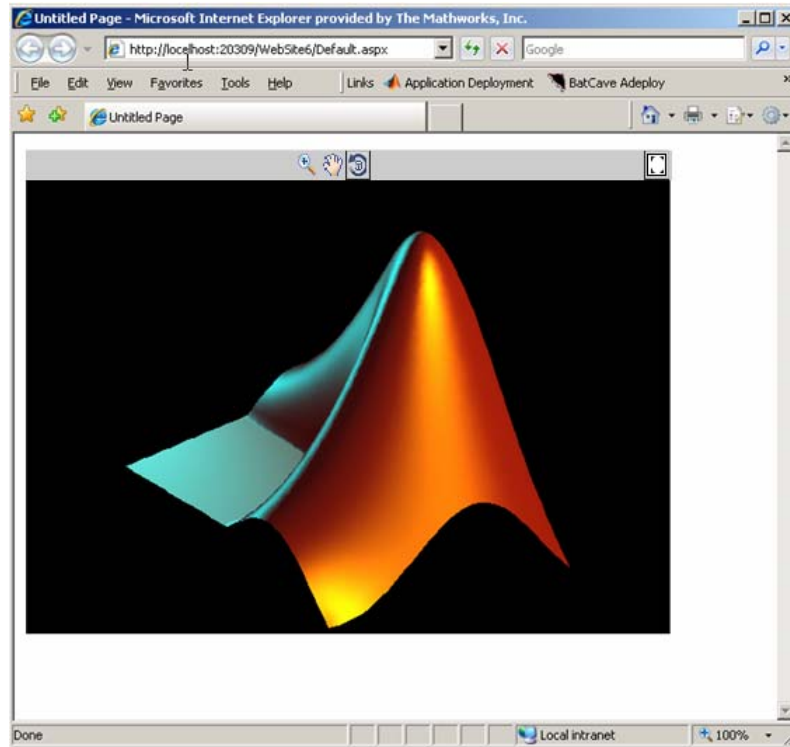


- 5 Drag the WebFigureControl from the toolbar to your Web page. After dragging, the Web page displays the following default figure.



You can resize the control as you would any other .NET Web control.

- 6 Switch to the Design view in Microsoft Visual Studio by selecting **View > Designer**.
- 7 Test the Web page by “playing” it in Microsoft Visual Studio. Select **Debug > Start Debugging**. The page should appear as follows.



- 8** Interact with the default figure on the page using your mouse. Click one of the three control icons at the top of the figure to activate the desired control, select the desired region of the figure you want to manipulate, then click and drag as appropriate. For example, to zoom in on the figure, click the magnifying glass icon, then hover over the figure.
- 9** Close the page as you would any other window, automatically exiting debug or “play” mode.
- 10** The `WebFigureService` you created has been verified as functioning properly and you can attach a custom `WebFigure` to the Web page:
  - a** To enable return of the `webfigure` and to bind it to the `webfigure` control, add a reference to `MWArray` to your project and a reference to the deployed component you created earlier (in “Assumptions About the

Examples” on page 6-6). See Chapter 3, “Using Components Created by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product” for more information.

- b** In Microsoft Visual Studio, access the code for the Web page by selecting **View > Code**.
- c** In Microsoft Visual Studio, go to the `Page_Load` method, and add this code, depending on if you are using the `C#` or Visual Basic language. Adding code to the `Page_Load` method ensures it executes every time the Web page loads.

- **C#:**

```
using MyComponent;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures;

public class
{
    protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        MyComponentclass myDeployedComponent =
            new MyComponentclass();
        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());
    }
}
```

- **Visual Basic:**

```
Imports MyComponent
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures

Class
    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object,
        ByVal e As System.EventArgs)
        Handles Me.Load
        Dim myDeployedComponent As _
            New MyComponentclass()
        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())
    End Sub
End Class
```



---

**Tip** This code causes the deployed component to be reinitialized upon each refresh of the page. A better implementation would involve initializing the `myDeployedComponent` variable when the server starts up using a `Global.asax` file, and then using that variable to get the `WebFigure` object. For more information on `Global.asax`, see “Using Global Application Class (`Global.asax`) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up” on page 6-28.

---

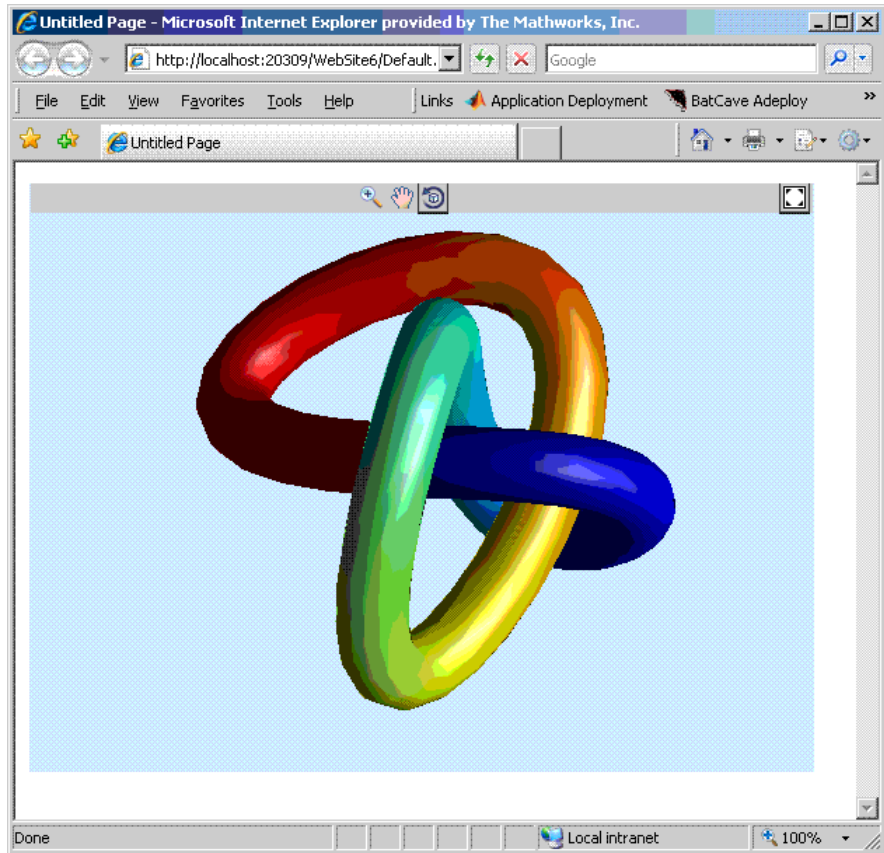
---

**Note** `WebFigureControl` stores the `WebFigure` object in the IIS session cache for each individual user. If this is not the desired configuration, see “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15 for information on creating a custom configuration.

---

- 11** Replay the Web page in Microsoft Visual Studio to confirm your `WebFigure` appears as desired. It should look like this.

## 6 Deploying a MATLAB® Figure Over the Web Using WebFigures



## Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure

### In this section...

“Overview” on page 6-15

“Manually Installing WebFigureService” on page 6-17

“Retrieving Multiple WebFigures From a Component” on page 6-18

“Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21

“Setting Up WebFigureControl for Remote Invocation” on page 6-23

“Getting an Embeddable String That References a WebFigure Attached to a WebFigureService” on page 6-25

“Improving Processing Times for JavaScript Using Minification” on page 6-27

“Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up” on page 6-28

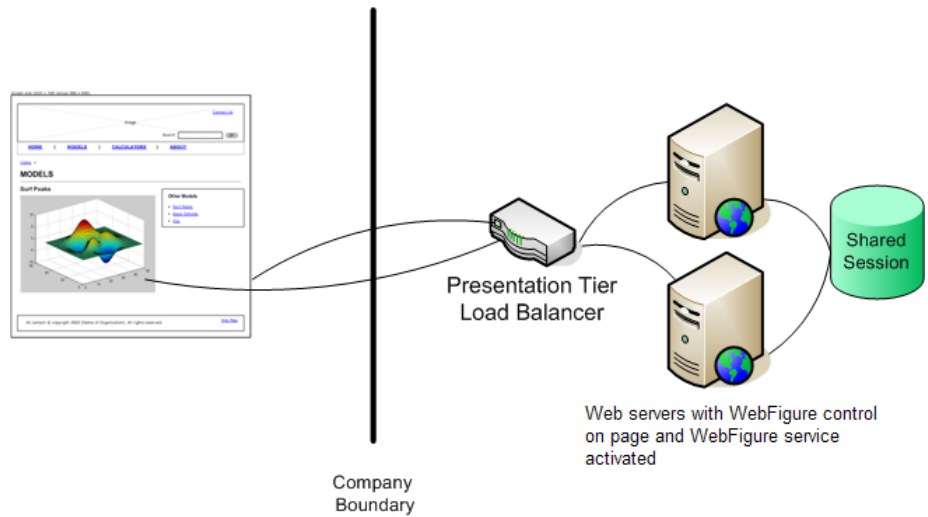
### Overview

The advanced configuration gives the experienced .NET programmer (possibly a business service developer or front-end developer) flexibility and control in configuring system architecture based on differing needs. For example, with the `WebFigureService` and the Web page on different servers, the administrator can optimally position the MCR (for performance reasons) or place customer-sensitive customer data behind a security firewall, if needed.

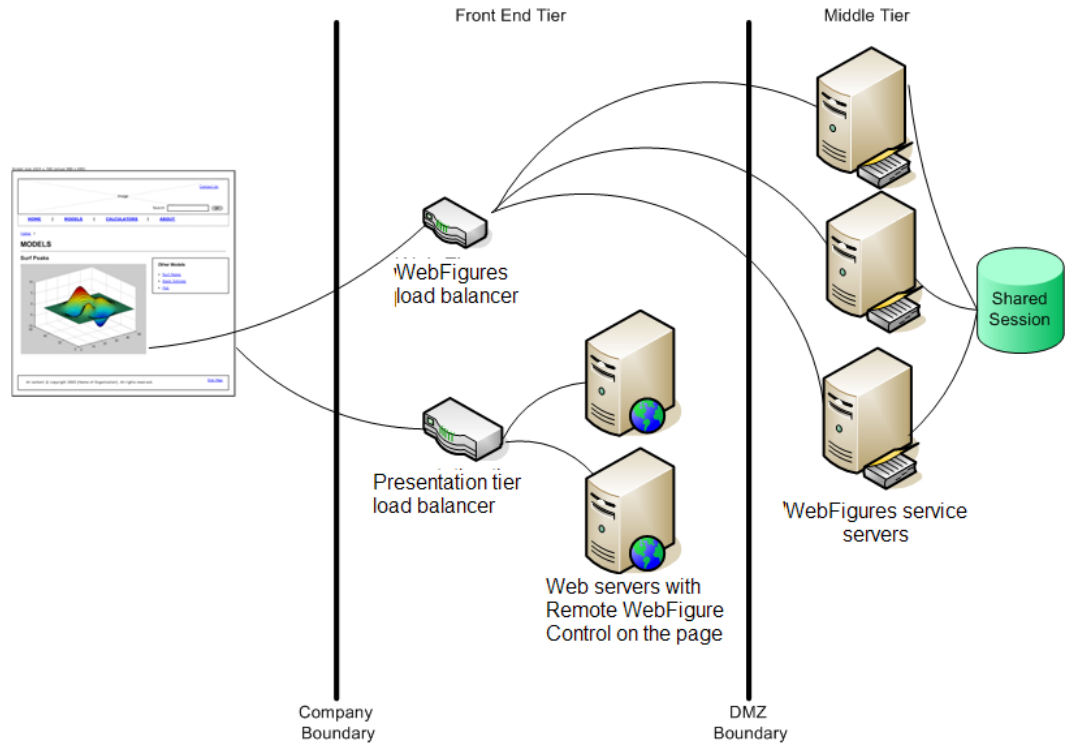
In summary, the advanced configuration offers more choices and adaptability for the user more familiar with Web environments and related technology, as illustrated by the following graphics.

This section describes various ways to customize the basic WebFigures implementation described in “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7.

### Using the WebFigure Control on the Frontend Servers Outside the Firewall



## Using the Remote WebFigure Control to Keep the WebFigure Service Cluster Behind the Firewall



## Manually Installing WebFigureService

WebFigureService is essentially a set of HTTP handlers that can service requests sent to an instance of Internet Information Service (IIS). There are occasions when you may want to manually install WebFigureService. For example:

- You want to implement the WebFigure controls programmatically and provide more detailed customization.
- Your Web environment was reconfigured from when you initially ran the “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7.

- You want to implement WebFigures in a multiple server environment, as depicted in the previous graphic.
- You want to understand more about how WebFigures for .NET works.

When you dragged the GUI control for WebFigures onto the Web page in “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7, you automatically installed WebFigureService in the Web application file `web.config`.

To install this manually:

- 1 Add a reference to `WebFiguresService.dll` from the folder `InstallRoot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\arch\v2.0` to the project, (where `InstallRoot` is the location of the installed MCR for machines with an installed MCR and `matlabroot` on a MATLAB Builder NE development machine without the MCR installed).
- 2 Add these lines to the `<httpHandlers>` section of `web.config`. This tells IIS to send any requests that come to the `__WebFigures.ashx` file to the `WebFigureHttpHandlerFactory` in the `WebFiguresService.dll`.

```
<httpHandlers>
  <add path="__WebFigures.ashx"
        verb="GET"
        type="MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures.
            Service.Handlers.Factories.
            Http.WebFigureHttpHandlerFactory"
        validate="false" />
</httpHandlers>
```

### Retrieving Multiple WebFigures From a Component

If your deployed component returns several WebFigures, then you have to make additional modifications to your code.

MATLAB sees a WebFigure the same way it see a `MWStructArray`. WebFigure constructors accept a WebFigure, an `MWArray`, or an `MWStructArray` as inputs.

Use the following examples as guides, depending on what type of functions you are working with.

## Working with Functions that Return a Single WebFigure as the Function's Only Output

### C#

```
using MyComponent;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures;

public class
{
    protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        MyComponentclass myDeployedComponent =
            new MyComponentclass();

        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());
    }
}
```

### Visual Basic

```
Imports MyComponent
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures

Class
    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object,
                            ByVal e As System.EventArgs)
        Handles Me.Load
        Dim myDeployedComponent As _
            New MyComponentclass()

        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())
    End Sub
End Class
```

### Working With Functions That Return Multiple WebFigures In an Array as the Output

#### C#

```
using MyComponent;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures;

public class
{
    protected void Page_Load(object sender, EventArgs e)
    {
        MyComponentclass myDeployedComponent =
            new MyComponentclass();

        //If the function returns an array with 4 WebFigures
        // in it and takes in no inputs.
        MWArray[] outputs = myDeployedComponent.getKnot(4);

        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(outputs[0]);

        WebFigureControl2.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(outputs[1]);

        WebFigureControl3.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(outputs[2]);

        WebFigureControl4.WebFigure =
            new WebFigure(outputs[3]);
    }
}
```

#### Visual Basic

```
Imports MyComponent
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures

Class
    Protected Sub Page_Load(ByVal sender As Object,
```



```
                ByVal e As System.EventArgs)
                Handles Me.Load
    Dim myDeployedComponent As _
        New MyComponentclass()

    Dim outputs as MArray() = _
        myDeployedComponent.getKnot(4)

        WebFigureControl1.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(outputs(0))

        WebFigureControl2.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(outputs(1))

        WebFigureControl3.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(outputs(2))

        WebFigureControl4.WebFigure = _
            New WebFigure(outputs(3))

    End Sub
End Class
```

## Attaching a WebFigure

After you have manually installed `WebFigureService`, the server where it is installed is ready to receive requests for any `WebFigure` information. In the Quick Start, `WebFigureService` uses the session cache built into IIS to retrieve a `WebFigure`, per user, and display it. Since a `WebFigureControl` isn't being used in this case, you need to manually set up the `WebFigureService` and attach the `WebFigure`. Add the code supplied in this section to attach a `WebFigure` of your choosing.

This method of setting up `WebFigureService` and attaching the figure manually is very useful in the following situations:

- You do not want front-end servers to have `WebFigureService` running on them for performance reasons.
- You are displaying a `WebFigure` that does not change based on the current user or session. When multiple users are sharing the same `WebFigure`, which is very common, it is much more efficient to store a single `WebFigure`

in the Application or Cache state, rather than issuing all users their own figure.

There are a number of ways to attach a WebFigure to a scope, depending on state (note that these terms follow standard industry definitions and usage):

State	Definition
Session	The method used by WebFigureControl by default, which is tied to a specific user session and cannot be shared across sessions. If you use IIS session sharing capabilities, you can use this across servers in a cluster.
Application	Available for any user of your application, per application lifetime. IIS will not propagate this across servers in a cluster, but if each server attaches the data to this cache once, all users can access it very efficiently.
Cache	Similar to Application, but with more potential settings. You can assign “time to live” and other settings found in Microsoft documentation.

---

**Note** In this type of configuration, it is typical to have the following code executed once in the Global.asax server startup block. For more information on Global.asax, see “Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up” on page 6-28.

---

Add the following code to manually attach the WebFigure, based on whether you are using C# or Visual Basic:

- **C#:**

```
MyComponentclass myDeployedComponent =  
    new MyComponentclass();  
  
Session["SessionStateWebFigure"] =  
    new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());
```

**Or**

```
Application["ApplicationStateWebFigure"] =
    new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());
```

**Or**

```
Cache["CacheStateWebFigure"] =
    new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());
```

- **Visual Basic:**

```
Dim myDeployedComponent As _
    New MyComponentclass()

Session("SessionStateWebFigure") = _
    New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())
```

**Or**

```
Application("ApplicationStateWebFigure") = _
    New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())
```

**Or**

```
Cache("CacheStateWebFigure") = _
    New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())
```

## Setting Up WebFigureControl for Remote Invocation

After you drag a `WebFigureControl` onto a page, as in “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7, you either assign the `WebFigure` property or set the Remote Invocation properties, depending on how the figure will be used.

The procedure in this section allows you to tell `WebFigureControl` to reference a `WebFigure` that has been manually attached to a `WebFigureService` on a remote server or cluster of remote servers. This allows you to use the custom control, yet the resources of `WebFigureService` are running on a remote server to maximize performance.

- 1 Drag a `WebFigureControl` from the toolbox onto the page, if you haven’t done so already in “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7.

---

**Note** If you are running on a system with 64-bit architecture, use the information in “Advanced Configuration of a WebFigure” on page 6-15 to work with WebFigures unless you are deploying a Web site which is 32-bit only and you have a 32-bit MCR installed.

---

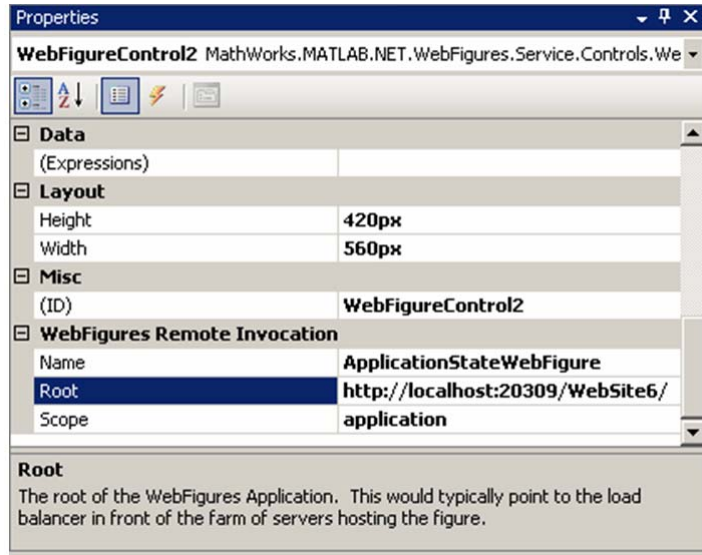
- 2** In the Properties pane for this control, set the **Name** and **Scope** attributes as follows:
- **Name** ApplicationStateWebFigure
  - **Scope** application

---

**Caution** Always attempt to define the scope. If you leave **Scope** blank, the **Session** state, the **Application** state, and then the **Cache** state (in this order) will be checked. If there are WebFigures in any of these states with the same name, there can be potential for conflict and confusion. The first figure with the same name will be used by default.

---

The pane should now look like this:




---

**Note** If you don't provide a **root** (usually the location of the load balancer), it is assumed to be the server where the page is executing.

---

## Getting an Embeddable String That References a WebFigure Attached to a WebFigureService

From any server, you can use the `GetHTMLEmbedString` API to get a string that can be embedded onto a page, if you followed the procedures “Manually Installing WebFigureService” on page 6-17 in “Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21.

To do so, use the following optional parameters and code snippets (or something similar, depending on your implementation). For information on the differences between session, application, and cache scopes, see “Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21.

### GetHTMLEmbedString API Parameters

Parameter	If not specified...
ID	Default MATLAB WebFigure (the MATLAB membrane logo).
Root	The relative path to the current Web page will be used.
WebFigureAttachType	Will search through Session state, then Application state, then Cache state.
Height	Default height will be 420.
Width	Default width will be 560.

### Referencing a WebFigure Attached to the Local Server

- **C#:**

```
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures.Service;

String localEmbedString =
    WebFigureServiceUtility.GetHTMLEmbedString(
        "SessionStateWebFigure",
        WebFigureAttachType.session,
        300,
        300);

Response.Write(localEmbedString);
```

- **Visual Basic:**

```
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures.Service

Dim localEmbedString As String = _
    WebFigureServiceUtility.GetHTMLEmbedString( _
        "SessionStateWebFigure", _
        WebFigureAttachType.session, _
        300, _
        300)
```

```
Response.Write(localEmbedString)
```

## Referencing a WebFigure Attached to a Remote Server

- C#:

```
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures.Service;

String remoteEmbedString =
    WebFigureServiceUtility.GetHTMLEmbedString(
        "SessionStateWebFigure",
        "http://localhost:20309/WebSite7/",
        WebFigureAttachType.session,
        300,
        300);

Response.Write(remoteEmbedString);
```

- Visual Basic:

```
Imports MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.WebFigures.Service

Dim localEmbedString As String = _
    WebFigureServiceUtility.GetHTMLEmbedString( _
        "SessionStateWebFigure", _
        "http://localhost:20309/WebSite7/", _
        WebFigureAttachType.session, _
        300, _
        300)

Response.Write(localEmbedString)
```

## Improving Processing Times for JavaScript Using Minification

This application uses JavaScript to perform most of its AJAX functionality. Because JavaScript runs in the client browser, it must all be streamed to the client computer before it can execute. To improve this process, you use a standard JavaScript minification algorithm to remove comments and white

space in the code. This feature is enabled by default. To disable it, create an environment variable called `mathworks.webfigures.disableJSMIn` and set its value to `true`.

### Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up

In ASP.NET there is a special type of object you can add called a *Global Application Class*, Also known by the name *Global.asax*.

`Global.asax` classes have methods that are called at various times in the IIS life cycle, such as `Application_Start` and `Application_End`. These methods get called respectively when the server is first started and when the server is being shut down.

As seen in “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7, the default behavior for a `WebFigureControl` is to store data in the `Session` cache on the server. In other words, each user that accesses a page using a `WebFigureControl` has an individual instance of that `WebFigure` in the cache. This is useful if each user gets specific data, but resources can be wasted in situations where all users are accessing the same `WebFigures`.

Therefore, in order to maximize available resources, it makes sense to move `WebFigure` code for commonly used figures into the `Application_Start` method of the `Global.asax`. In the following example, code written in the Web page initialization section of “Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21 is moved into a `Global.asax` method as follows:

#### C#

```
void Application_Start(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    // Code that runs on application startup
    MyComponentclass myDeployedComponent =
        new MyComponentclass();

    Application["ApplicationStateWebFigure"] =
        new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());

    //Or
```



```
Cache["CacheStateWebFigure"] =  
    new WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot());  
}
```

### Visual Basic

```
Sub Application_Start(ByVal sender As Object, ByVal e As EventArgs)  
    ' Code that runs on application startup  
    Dim myDeployedComponent As _  
        New MyComponentclass()  
  
    Application("ApplicationStateWebFigure") = _  
        New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())  
  
    'Or  
  
    Cache("CacheStateWebFigure") = _  
        New WebFigure(myDeployedComponent.getKnot())  
End Sub
```

---

**Note** In this scenario, notice a `WebFigure` is not bound to the `Session`, since you usually need to share the `WebFigures` across different sessions. However, it may be useful to use the `Cache` option, since it provides a way to specify `Time To Live` so the `WebFigure` can be regenerated and reattached at a specific time interval.

Once the figure is attached to a cache, reference it either from the `WebFigureControl` as seen in “Setting Up `WebFigureControl` for Remote Invocation” on page 6-23 or directly from the `Web` page as in “Getting an Embeddable String That References a `WebFigure` Attached to a `WebFigureService`” on page 6-25.

---

### Upgrading Your WebFigures

If you want to upgrade your version of MATLAB Builder NE and retain WebFigures created with a prior product release, do the following:

- 1 Delete the `WebFigureControl` icon from the toolbox.
- 2 Delete any WebFigures from your page.
- 3 Upgrade your version of MATLAB Builder NE .
- 4 Add the new `WebFigureControl` icon to the toolbox.
- 5 Drag new WebFigures on to your page.

## Troubleshooting

Use the following section to diagnose error conditions encountered when implementing WebFigures for the .NET feature.

In WebFigures, there are two ways to display errors: by turning debug on for the site, and by turning it off. When debug is turned on, some error messages contain links to HTML pages that describe how the problem might be solved. When it is turned off, only the error message is shown.

Common causes of errors include:

- MCR is not installed or is the wrong version (meaning MWArray.dll is the wrong version or WebFigureService.dll is the wrong version).
- Deployed component is a different version than that compatible with the MCR.
- Incorrect framework is being used (only .NET 2.0 Framework is supported as of R2008b for WebFigures).
- WebFigureService is not installed. See “Manually Installing WebFigureService” on page 6-17.
- WebFigure is not attached to WebFigureService. See “Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21.
- Remote root URL is pointing to an invalid server.

Common errors and their diagnosis follow.

Error	Diagnosis
Issue Displaying Image. Please Refresh.	Most often, this message is generated when the session state has expired and the WebFigure has been deleted. Refreshing the session will reestablish the WebFigure in cache and the figure will reappear.
No WebFigure Can Be Found with the Name Specified	The WebFigure isn't attached correctly. See “Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21.

<b>Error</b>	<b>Diagnosis</b>
WebFigureService Has Encountered an Unrecoverable Error	A critical error has occurred but the exact cause is unknown. Typically this is due to some type of system configuration issue that could not be anticipated.
WebFigureService Not Functioning	The WebFigureService httpHandlerFactory could not be found on the server specified. See “Manually Installing WebFigureService” on page 6-17.
Could not find a part of the path <i>pathname</i>	The logging environment variable is set to a folder that does not exist.

## Logging Levels

There are several logging levels that can be used to diagnose problems with WebFigures.

Logging Level	Uses
Severe	Unrecoverable errors and exceptions
Warning	Recoverable errors that might occur
Information	Informative messages
Finer	For monitoring application flow (when different parts of an application are executed)

You can manually set the log level by setting an environment variable called `mathworks.webfigures.logLevel` to one of the above strings.

If you set this environment variable to something other than the above strings or it is not set, it defaults to a level of `Warning` or `Severe` only.

By default, all exceptions are shown within the `WebFigure` control on the `Web` page when `debug` mode is on for the site.

If you want more detailed logging information, or log information when `debug` is not on, set an environment variable called `mathworks.webfigures.logLocation` to the location where the log file is written. The log file is named `yourwebappnameWFSLog.txt`.




# Working with MATLAB Figures and Images

---


- “Your Role in Working with Figures and Images” on page 7-2
- “Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure” on page 7-3
- “Working with MATLAB Figure and Image Data” on page 7-6

## Your Role in Working with Figures and Images

 <p><b>MATLAB Programmer</b></p>	<p>MATLAB expert No IT experience No access to IT systems</p>	<p>Develops model Uses the builder tools to create a component that is given to the business service developer</p>
---	---	--

When you work with figures and images as a MATLAB programmer, you are responsible for:

- Preparing a MATLAB figure for export
- Making changes to the figure (optional)
- Exporting the figure
- Cleaning up the figure window

 <p><b>Front-End Developer</b></p>	<p>Service consumer responsible for presentation and usability No MATLAB experience</p>	<p>Creates front end applications</p>
---	---	---------------------------------------

When you work with figures and images as a front-end developer, some of the tasks you are responsible for include:

- Getting a WebFigure from a deployed component
- Getting raw image data from a deployed component converted into a byte array
- Getting a buffered image from a component
- Getting a buffered image or a byte array from a WebFigure



## Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure

### In this section...


“Preparing a MATLAB Figure for Export” on page 7-3

“Changing the Figure (Optional)” on page 7-3

“Exporting the Figure” on page 7-4

“Cleaning Up the Figure Window” on page 7-4

“Example: Modifying and Exporting Figure Data” on page 7-4

 <p><b>MATLAB Programmer</b></p>	<p>MATLAB expert No IT experience No access to IT systems</p>	<p>Develops model Uses the builder tools to create a component that is given to the business service developer</p>
---	---	--

## Preparing a MATLAB Figure for Export

**1** Create a figure window. For example:

```
h = figure;
```

**2** Add graphics to the figure. For example:

```
surf(peaks);
```

## Changing the Figure (Optional)

Optionally, you can change the figure numerous ways. For example:

### Alter Visibility

```
set(h, 'Visible', 'off');
```

### Change Background Color

```
set(h, 'Color', [.8,.9,1]);
```

## Alter Orientation and Size

```
width=500;
height=500;
rotation=30;
elevation=30;
set(h, 'Position', [0, 0, width, height]);
view([rotation, elevation]);
```

## Exporting the Figure

Export the contents of the figure in one of two ways:

### WebFigure

To export as a WebFigure:

```
returnFigure = webfigure(h);
```

### Image Data

To export image data, for example:

```
imgform = 'png';
returnByteArray = figToImStream(`figHandle', h, ...
    `imageFormat', imgForm, ...
    `outputType', `uint8');
```

## Cleaning Up the Figure Window

To close the figure window:

```
close(h);
```

## Example: Modifying and Exporting Figure Data

### WebFigure

```
function returnFigure = getWebFigure()
h = figure;
set(h, 'Visible', 'off');
surf(peaks);
```


```
set(h, 'Color', [.8,.9,1]);  
returnFigure = webfigure(h);  
close(h);
```

## Image Data

```
function returnByteArray = getImageDataOrientation(height, width,  
                                                  elevation, rotation, imageFormat )  
  
h = figure;  
set(h, 'Visible', 'off');  
surf(peaks);  
set(h, 'Color', [.8,.9,1]);  
set(h, 'Position', [0, 0, width, height]);  
view([rotation, elevation]);  
returnByteArray = figToImStream(`figHandle', h, ...  
                               `imageFormat', imageFormat, ...  
                               `outputType', `uint8');  
  
close(h);
```

## Working with MATLAB Figure and Image Data

In this section...
“For More Comprehensive Examples” on page 7-6
“Working with Figures” on page 7-6
“Working with Images” on page 7-6

 <b>Front-End Developer</b>	Service consumer responsible for presentation and usability No MATLAB experience	Creates front end applications
---	---	--------------------------------

### For More Comprehensive Examples

This section contains code snippets intended to demonstrate specific functionality related to working with figure and image data.

To see these snippets in the context of more fully-realized multi-step examples, see the *MATLAB Application Deployment Web Example Guide*.

### Working with Figures

#### Getting a Figure From a Deployed Component

For information about how to retrieve a figure from a deployed component, see “Working with Functions that Return a Single WebFigure as the Function’s Only Output” on page 6-19.

### Working with Images

#### Getting Encoded Image Bytes from an Image in a Component

**.NET**

```
public byte[] getByteArrayFromDeployedComponent()
```

```
{
    MWArray width = 500;
    MWArray height = 500;
    MWArray rotation = 30;
    MWArray elevation = 30;
    MWArray imageFormat = "png";

    MWNumericArray result =
        (MWNumericArray)deployment.getImageDataOrientation(
            height,
            width,
            elevation,
            rotation,
            imageFormat);
    return (byte[])result.ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Real);
}
```

## Getting a Buffered Image in a Component

### .NET

```
public byte[] getByteArrayFromDeployedComponent()
{
    MWArray width = 500;
    MWArray height = 500;
    MWArray rotation = 30;
    MWArray elevation = 30;
    MWArray imageFormat = "png";

    MWNumericArray result =
        (MWNumericArray)deployment.getImageDataOrientation(
            height,
            width,
            elevation,
            rotation,
            imageFormat);
    return (byte[])result.ToVector(MWArrayComponent.Real);
}
```

```
public Image getImageFromDeployedComponent()
{
    byte[] byteArray = getByteArrayFromDeployedComponent();
    MemoryStream ms = new MemoryStream(myByteArray, 0,
    myByteArray.Length);
    ms.Write(myByteArray, 0, myByteArray.Length);
    return Image.FromStream(ms, true);
}
```

### Getting Image Data from a WebFigure

The following example shows how to get image data from a WebFigure object. It also shows how to specify the image type and the orientation of the image.

#### .NET

```
WebFigure figure =
    new WebFigure(deployment.getWebFigure());
WebFigureRenderer renderer =
    new WebFigureRenderer();

//Creates a parameter object that can be changed
// to represent a specific WebFigure and its orientation.
//If you dont set any values it uses the defaults for that
// figure (what they were when the figure was created in M).
WebFigureRenderParameters param =
    new WebFigureRenderParameters(figure);

param.Rotation = 30;
param.Elevation = 30;
param.Width = 500;
param.Height = 500;

//If you need a byte array that can be streamed out
// of a web page you can use this:
byte[] outputImageAsBytes =
    renderer.RenderToEncodedBytes(param);
```

```
//If you need a .NET Image (can't be used on the web)
// you can use this code:
Image outputImageAsImage =
    renderer.RenderToImage(param);
```





# Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting

---

- “Overview” on page 8-2
- “Your Role in Building Distributed Applications” on page 8-4
- “Selecting the Best Method of Accessing Your Component: MWArray API or Native .NET API” on page 8-5
- “Creating a Remotable .NET Component” on page 8-7
- “Enabling Access to a Remotable .NET Component” on page 8-12

## Overview

In this section...
“What Are Remotable Components?” on page 8-2
“Benefits of Using .NET Remoting” on page 8-2

### What Are Remotable Components?

*Remotable .NET components* allow you to access MATLAB functionality remotely, as part of a distributed system consisting of multiple applications, domains, browsers, or machines.

To create a remotable component, you must first create the component and then enable others to access it.

### Benefits of Using .NET Remoting

There are many reasons to create remotable components:

- **Cost savings** — Changes to business logic do not require you to roll out new software to every client. Instead, you can confine new updates to a small set of business servers.
- **Increased security for Web applications** — Implementing .NET Remoting allows your database, for example, to reside safely behind one or more firewalls.
- **Software Compatibility** — Using remotable components, which employ standard formatting protocols like SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol), can significantly enhance the compatibility of the component with libraries and applications.
- **Ability to run applications as Windows services** — To run as a Windows service, you must have access to a remotable component hosted by the service. Applications implemented as a Windows service provide many benefits to application developers who require an automated server running as a background process independent of a particular user account.

- **Flexibility to isolate native code binaries that were previously incompatible** — Mix native and managed code (such as the MATLAB Compiler Runtime) without restrictions.

## Your Role in Building Distributed Applications

Depending on your role in your organization, you may need assistance to completely implement .NET Remoting. The next table, .NET Remoting Deployment Roles, Responsibilities, and Tasks, describes some of the different roles, or jobs, that MATLAB Builder NE users typically perform when designing, building, running, and deploying a remotable .NET component.

### .NET Remoting Deployment Roles, Responsibilities, and Tasks

Role	Goal	Tasks
MATLAB programmer	Creates distributed .NET applications run by remotable components, from MATLAB code.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Writes and deploys MATLAB code.</li> <li>Creates a deployable, remotable .NET component as in “Creating a Remotable .NET Component” on page 8-7.</li> </ul>
.NET programmer	Exposes .NET applications to end users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Writes client/server code to access the remotable component as in “Using the MArray API” on page 8-12 or “Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example” on page 8-19.</li> </ul>

## Selecting the Best Method of Accessing Your Component: MWArray API or Native .NET API

As of R2008b, there are two data conversion APIs that are available to marshal and format data across the managed (.NET) / unmanaged (MATLAB) code boundary. In addition to the previously available MWArray API, the new Native API is available. Each API has advantages and limitations and each has particular applications for which it is best suited.

The MWArray API, which consists of the MWArray class and several derived types that map to MATLAB data types, is the standard API that has been used since the introduction of MATLAB Builder NE. It provides full marshalling and formatting services for all basic MATLAB data types including sparse arrays, structures, and cell arrays. This API requires the MATLAB MCR to be installed on the target machine as it makes use of several primitive MATLAB functions. For information about using this API, see “Using the MWArray API” on page 8-12.

The Native API was designed especially, though not exclusively, to support .NET remoting. It allows you to pass arguments and return values using standard .NET types. This feature is especially useful for clients that access a remoteable component using the native interface API, as it does not require the client machine to have the MATLAB MCR installed. In addition, as only native .NET types are used in this API, there is no need to learn semantics of a new set of data conversion classes. This API does not directly support .NET analogs for the MATLAB structure and cell array types. For information about using this API, see “Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example” on page 8-19.

### Features of the MWArray API Compared With the Native .NET API

	MWArray API	Native .NET API
Marshalling/formatting for all basic MATLAB types	X	
Pass arguments and return values using standard .NET types		X

### Features of the MWArray API Compared With the Native .NET API (Continued)

	MWArray API	Native .NET API
Access to remotable component from client without installed MATLAB		X
Access to remotable component from client without installed MCR (see “Using the Native .NET API: The Cell and Struct Example” on page 8-26).		X

### Using Native .NET Structure and Cell Arrays

MATLAB Builder NE’s native .NET API accepts standard .NET data types for inputs and outputs to MATLAB function calls.

These standard .NET data types are wrapped by the `Object` class—the base class for all .NET data types. This object representation is sufficient as long as the MATLAB functions have numeric, logical, or string inputs or outputs. It does not work well for MATLAB-specific data types like structure (`struct`) and cell arrays, since the native representation of these arrays types result in a multi-dimensional `Object` array that is difficult to comprehend or process.

Instead, MATLAB Builder NE’ provides a special class hierarchy for `struct` and cell array representation designed to easily interface with the native .NET API.

See “Using the Native .NET API: The Cell and Struct Example” on page 8-26 for details.

## Creating a Remotable .NET Component

### In this section...

“Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool” on page 8-7

“Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command” on page 8-10

“Files Generated by the Compilation Process” on page 8-10

## Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool

### Preparing to Build Your Remote Component with deploytool

- 1 Copy the example files as follows depending on whether you plan to use the MArray API or the native .NET API:

- **If using the MArray API**, copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your working folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET  
  \MagicRemoteExample\MArrayAPI\MagicSquareRemoteComp
```

After you copy the files, at the MATLAB command prompt, change the working directory (cd) to the new MagicSquareRemoteComp subfolder in your working folder.

- **If using the native .NET API**, copy the following folder that ships with the MATLAB product to your working folder:

```
matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET\MagicRemoteExample\  
  NativeAPI\MagicSquareRemoteComp
```

After you copy the file, at the MATLAB command prompt, change the working directory (cd) to the new MagicSquareRemoteComp subfolder in your working folder.

- 2 Write the MATLAB function Your MATLAB code does not require any additions to support .NET Remoting. The following code for the makesquare


function is in the file `makesquare.m` in the `MagicSquareRemoteComp` subfolder:

```
function y = makesquare(x)

%MAKESQUARE Magic square of size x.
% Y = MAKESQUARE(X) returns a magic square of size x.
% This file is used as an example for the MATLAB
% Builder NE product.

% Copyright 2001-2008 The MathWorks, Inc.
% $Revision: 1.1.4.30 $ $Date: 2010/01/07 20:17:18 $

y = magic(x);
```

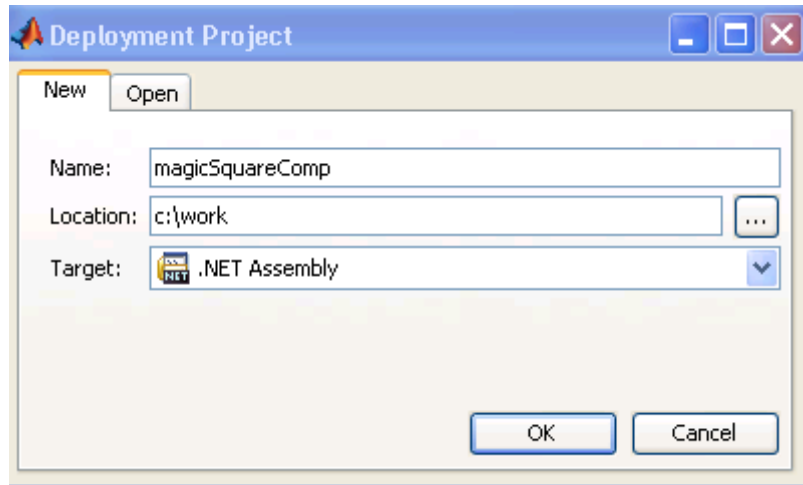
- 3** In MATLAB, open the Deployment Tool by issuing the `deploytool` command.
- 4** Click the **Actions** icon () in the upper-right corner. Then, select **Settings**.
  - a** Select **.NET** under **Project Settings**.
  - b** Select **Enable .NET Remoting**.
  - c** Click **OK**.

### Build Your Remote Component with `deploytool`

- 1** Start MATLAB.
- 2** Type `deploytool` at the command prompt and press Enter. The `deploytool` GUI opens.
- 3** Create a deployment project using the Deployment Project dialog:
  - a** Type the name of your project in the **Name** field.
  - b** Enter the location of the project in the **Location** field. Alternately, navigate to the location.
  - c** Select the target for the deployment project from the **Target** drop-down menu.



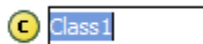
- d Click **OK**.



### Creating a .NET Project

- 4 On the **Build** tab:

- If you are building a COM application, click **Add files**
- If you are building a .NET application, click **Add class**. Type the name of the class in the Class Name field, designated by the letter “c”:




For this class, add files you want to compile by clicking **Add files**. To add another class, click **Add class**.

---

**Note** You may optionally add supporting files. For examples of these files, see the `deploytool` Help. To add these files, in the Shared Resources and Helper Files area:

- Click **Add files/directories**
  - Click **Open** to select the file or files.
- 

- 5 When you complete your changes, click the Build button ()

### Building a Remotable Component Using the `mcc` Command

From the MATLAB prompt, issue the following command:

```
mcc -B  
"dotnet:CompName,ClassName,FrameworkVersion,ShareFlag,RemoteFlag"
```

where:

- *CompName* is the name of the component you want to create.
- *ClassName* is the name of the C# class to which the component belongs.
- *FrameworkVersion* is the version of .NET Framework for the component you are building. For example, 2.0 would denote .NET Framework 2.0.
- *ShareFlag* designates access to the component. Values are either `private` or `shared`. Default is `private`.
- *RemoteFlag* designates either a remote or local component. Values are either `remote` or `local`. Default is `local`.

---

**Note** .NET Framework 1.1 is no longer supported as of R2008b.

---

For example, if you want to build a private remotable component using the Magic Square example in Chapter 1, “Getting Started”, the `mcc` command to build the component for the .NET 2.0 Framework might look like this:

```
mcc -B "dotnet:MagicSquareComp,MagicSquareClass,2.0,private,remote"
```

### Files Generated by the Compilation Process

After compiling the components, ensure you have the following files in your `distrib` folder:

- `MagicSquareComp.dll` — The MWArray API component implementation assembly used by the server.
- `IMagicSquareComp.dll` — The MWArray API component interface assembly used by the client .

- `MagicSquareCompNative.dll` — The native .NET API component implementation assembly used by the server.
- `IMagicSquareCompNative.dll` — The native .NET API component interface assembly used by the client. You do not need to install an MCR on the client when using this interface.

## Enabling Access to a Remotable .NET Component

In this section...
“Using the MWArray API” on page 8-12
“Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example” on page 8-19
“Using the Native .NET API: The Cell and Struct Example” on page 8-26

### Using the MWArray API

#### Why Use the MWArray API?

After you create the remotable component, you can set up a console server and client using the MWArray API. For more information on choosing the right API for your access needs, see “Selecting the Best Method of Accessing Your Component: MWArray API or Native .NET API” on page 8-5.

Some reasons you might use the MWArray API instead of the native .NET API are:

- You are working with data structure arrays, which the native .NET API does not support.
- You or your users work extensively with many MATLAB data types.
- You or your users are familiar and comfortable using the MWArray API.

For information on accessing your component using the native .NET API, see “Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example” on page 8-19.

#### Coding and Building the Hosting Server Application and Configuration File

The server application hosts the remote component built in “Creating a Remotable .NET Component” on page 8-7. You can also perform these steps using the MWArray API (see “Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example” on page 8-19).

The client application, running in a separate process, accesses the remote component hosted by the server application.

Build the server using the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareMWServer.csproj`:

- 1 Change the references for the generated component assembly to `MagicSquareComp\distrib\MagicSquareComp.dll`.
- 2 Select the appropriate build platform.
- 3 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 4 Build the `MagicSquareMWServer` project.
- 5 Supply the configuration file for the `MagicSquareMWServer`.

**MagicSquareServer Code.** Use the C# code for the server located in the file `MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareServer.cs`:

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;

namespace MagicSquareServer
{
    class MagicSquareServer
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            RemotingConfiguration.Configure
                (@"..\\..\\..\\..\\MagicSquareServer.exe.config");

            Console.WriteLine("Magic Square Server started...");

            Console.ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

This code does the following processing:

- Reads the associated configuration file to determine

- The name of the component that it will host
- The remoting protocol and message formatting to use
- The lease time for the remote component
- Signals that the server is active and waits for a carriage return to be entered before terminating.

**MagicSquareServer Configuration File.** The configuration file for the `MagicSquareServer` is in the file `MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareServer.exe.config`. The entire configuration file, written in XML, follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.runtime.remoting>
    <application>
      <service>
        <wellknown mode="SingleCall"
          type="MagicSquareComp.MagicSquareClass, MagicSquareComp"
          objectUri="MagicSquareClass.remote" />
      </service>
      <lifetime leaseTime= "5M" renewOnCallTime="2M"
        leaseManagerPollTime="10S" />
    <channels>
      <channel ref="tcp" port="1234">
        <serverProviders>
          <formatter ref="binary" typeFilterLevel="Full" />
        </serverProviders>
      </channel>
    </channels>
  </application>
  <debug loadTypes="true"/>
</system.runtime.remoting>
</configuration>
```

This code specifies:

- The mode in which the remote component will be accessed—in this case, single call mode

- The name of the remote component, the component assembly, and the object URI (uniform resource identifier) used to access the remote component
- The lease time for the remote component
- The remoting protocol (TCP/IP) and port number
- The message formatter (binary) and the permissions for the communication channel (full trust)
- The server debugging option

## Coding and Building the Client Application and Configuration File

The client application, running in a separate process, accesses the remote component running in the server application you built previously. (See “Coding and Building the Hosting Server Application and Configuration File” on page 8-12.)

Next build the remote client using the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareMWClient.csproj`. This file references both the shared data conversion assembly `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\win32\v2.0\MWArray.dll` and the generated component interface assembly `MagicSquareComp\distrib\IMagicSquareComp`.

To create the remote client using Microsoft Visual Studio:

- 1 Select the appropriate build platform.
- 2 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 3 Build the `MagicSquareMWClient` project.
- 4 Supply the configuration file for the `MagicSquareMWServer`.

**MagicSquareClient Code.** Use the C# code for the client located in the file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareClient.cs`. The client code is shown here:

```
using System;  
using System.Configuration;  
using System.Runtime.Remoting;
```

```
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels.Http;

using System.Collections;
using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels.Tcp;

using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays;

using IMagicSquareComp;

namespace MagicSquareClient
{
    class MagicSquareClient
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                RemotingConfiguration.Configure
                    (@"MagicSquareClient.exe.config");

                String urlServer=
                    ConfigurationSettings.AppSettings["MagicSquareServer"];

                IMagicSquareClass magicSquareComp=
                    (IMagicSquareClass)Activator.GetObject
                        (typeof(IMagicSquareClass),
                         urlServer);

                // Get user specified command line arguments or set default
                double arraySize= (0 != args.Length)
                    ? Double.Parse(args[0]) : 4;

                // Compute the magic square and print the result
                MWNumericArray magicSquare=
                    (MWNumericArray)magicSquareComp.makesquare
                        (arraySize);
            }
        }
    }
}
```



```
        Console.WriteLine("Magic square of order {0}\n\n{1}",
                          arraySize, magicSquare);
    }

    catch (Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(exception.Message);
    }

    Console.ReadLine();
}
}
}
```

This code does the following:

- The client reads the associated configuration file to get the name and location of the remotable component.
- The client instantiates the remotable object using the static `Activator.GetObject` method
- From this point, the remoting client calls methods on the remotable component exactly as it would call a local component method.

**MagicSquareClient Configuration File.** The configuration file for the magic square client is in the file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareClient.exe.config`. The configuration file, written in XML, is shown here:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <appSettings>
    <add key="MagicSquareServer"
         value="tcp://localhost:1234/MagicSquareClass.remote"/>
  </appSettings>
  <system.runtime.remoting>
    <application>
      <channels>
        <channel name="MagicSquareChannel" ref="tcp" port="0">
          <clientProviders>
```

```
        <formatter ref="binary" />
    </clientProviders>
    <serverProviders>
        <formatter ref="binary" typeFilterLevel="Full" />
    </serverProviders>
    </channel>
</channels>
</application>
</system.runtime.remoting>
</configuration>
```

This code specifies:

- The name of the remote component server and the remote component URI (uniform resource identifier)
- The remoting protocol (TCP/IP) and port number
- The message formatter (binary) and the permissions for the communication channel (full trust)

### Starting the Server Application

Starting the server by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX<sup>®</sup> command window and cd to `MagicSquareServer\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug`.
- 2 Run `MagicSquareServer.exe`. You will see the message:

```
Magic Square Server started...
```

### Starting the Client Application

Start the client by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX command window and cd to `MagicSquareClient\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug`.
- 2 Run `MagicSquareClient.exe`. After the MCR initializes, you should see the following output:

Magic square of order 4

```
16  2  3 13
 5 11 10  8
 9  7  6 12
 4 14 15  1
```

## Using the Native .NET API: The Magic Square Example

### Why Use the Native .NET API?

After the remotable component has been created, you can set up a server application and client using the native .NET API. For more information on choosing the right API for your access needs, see “Selecting the Best Method of Accessing Your Component: MWArray API or Native .NET API” on page 8-5.

Some reasons you might use the native .NET API instead of the MWArray API are:

- You want to pass arguments and return values using standard .NET types, and you or your users don’t work extensively with data types specific to MATLAB.
- You want to access your component from a client machine without an installed version of MATLAB.

For information on accessing your component using the MWArray API, see “Using the MWArray API” on page 8-12.

### Coding and Building the Hosting Server Application and Configuration File

The server application will host the remote component you built in “Creating a Remotable .NET Component” on page 8-7.

The client application, running in a separate process, will access the remote component hosted by the server application. Build the server with the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareMWServer.csproj`:

- 1 Change the references for the generated component assembly to `MagicSquareComp\distrib\MagicSquareCompNative.dll`.
- 2 Select the appropriate build platform (32-bit or 64-bit).
- 3 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 4 Build the `MagicSquareServer` project.
- 5 Supply the configuration file for the `MagicSquareServer`.

**MagicSquareServer Code.** The C# code for the server is in the file `MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareServer.cs`. The `MagicSquareServer.cs` server code is shown here:

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;

namespace MagicSquareServer
{
    class MagicSquareServer
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            RemotingConfiguration.Configure
                ("..\..\..\..\MagicSquareServer.exe.config");

            Console.WriteLine("Magic Square Server started...");

            Console.ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

This code does the following:

- Reads the associated configuration file to determine the name of the component that it will host, the remoting protocol and message formatting to use, as well as the lease time for the remote component.

- Signals that the server is active and waits for a carriage return to be entered before terminating.

**MagicSquareServer Configuration File.** The configuration file for the MagicSquareServer is in the file MagicSquareServer\MagicSquareServer.exe.config. The entire configuration file, written in XML, is shown here:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.runtime.remoting>
    <application>
      <service>
        <wellknown mode="SingleCall"
          type="MagicSquareCompNative.MagicSquareClass,
            MagicSquareCompNative"
          objectUri="MagicSquareClass.remote" />
      </service>
      <lifetime leaseTime= "5M" renewOnCallTime="2M"
        leaseManagerPollTime="10S" />
    </application>
    <channels>
      <channel ref="tcp" port="1234">
        <serverProviders>
          <formatter ref="binary" typeFilterLevel="Full" />
        </serverProviders>
      </channel>
    </channels>
    <debug loadTypes="true"/>
  </system.runtime.remoting>
</configuration>
```

This code specifies:

- The mode in which the remote component will be accessed—in this case, single call mode
- The name of the remote component, the component assembly, and the object URI (uniform resource identifier) used to access the remote component
- The lease time for the remote component

- The remoting protocol (TCP/IP) and port number
- The message formatter (binary) and the permissions for the communication channel (full trust)
- The server debugging option

### Coding and Building the Client Application and Configuration File

The client application, running in a separate process, accesses the remote component running in the server application built in “Coding and Building the Hosting Server Application and Configuration File” on page 8-19. Build the remote client using the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareClient.csproj` which references both the shared data conversion assembly `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\win32\v2.0\MWArray.dll` and the generated component interface assembly `MagicSquareComp\distrib\IMagicSquareCompNative`. To create the remote client using Microsoft Visual Studio:

- 1 Select the appropriate build platform.
- 2 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 3 Build the `MagicSquareClient` project.
- 4 Supply the configuration file for the `MagicSquareServer`.

**MagicSquareClient Code.** The C# code for the client is in the file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareClient.cs`. The client code is shown here:

```
using System;
using System.Configuration;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels.Http;

using System.Collections;
using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Channels.Tcp;
```

```
using IMagicSquareCompNative;

namespace MagicSquareClient
{
    class MagicSquareClient
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                RemotingConfiguration.Configure
                    (@"MagicSquareClient.exe.config");

                String urlServer=
                    ConfigurationSettings.AppSettings["MagicSquareServer"];

                IMagicSquareClassNative magicSquareComp=
                    (IMagicSquareClassNative)Activator.GetObject
                    (typeof(IMagicSquareClassNative), urlServer);

                // Get user specified command line arguments or set default
                double arraySize= (0 != args.Length)
                    ? Double.Parse(args[0]) : 4;

                // Compute the magic square and print the result
                double[,] magicSquare=
                    (double[,])magicSquareComp.makesquare(arraySize);

                Console.WriteLine("Magic square of order {0}\n", arraySize);

                // Display the array elements:
                for (int i = 0; i < (int)arraySize; i++)
                    for (int j = 0; j < (int)arraySize; j++)
                        Console.WriteLine
                            ("Element({0},{1})= {2}", i, j, magicSquare[i, j]);
            }
        }

        catch (Exception exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(exception.Message);
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }  
  
        Console.ReadLine();  
    }  
}
```

This code does the following:

- The client reads the associated configuration file to get the name and location of the remoteable component.
- The client instantiates the remoteable object using the static `Activator.GetObject` method
- From this point, the remoting client calls methods on the remoteable component exactly as it would call a local component method.

**MagicSquareClient Configuration File.** The configuration file for the magic square client is in the file `MagicSquareClient\MagicSquareClient.exe.config`. The configuration file, written in XML, is shown here:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>  
<configuration>  
  <appSettings>  
    <add key="MagicSquareServer"  
      value="tcp://localhost:1234/MagicSquareClass.remote" />  
  </appSettings>  
<system.runtime.remoting>  
  <application>  
    <channels>  
      <channel name="MagicSquareChannel" ref="tcp" port="0">  
        <clientProviders>  
          <formatter ref="binary" />  
        </clientProviders>  
        <serverProviders>  
          <formatter ref="binary" typeFilterLevel="Full" />  
        </serverProviders>  
      </channel>  
    </channels>  
  </application>  
</system.runtime.remoting>  
</configuration>
```



```
</application>  
</system.runtime.remoting>  
</configuration>
```

This code specifies:

- The name of the remote component server and the remote component URI (uniform resource identifier)
- The remoting protocol (TCP/IP) and port number
- The message formatter (binary) and the permissions for the communication channel (full trust)

## Starting the Server Application

Start the server by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX command and cd to  
MagicSquareServer\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug.
- 2 Run MagicSquareServer.exe. You will see the message:

```
Magic Square Server started...
```

## Starting the Client Application

Start the client by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX command window and cd to  
MagicSquareClient\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug.
- 2 Run MagicSquareClient.exe. After the MCR initializes you should see the following output:

```
Magic square of order 4
```

```
Element(0,0)= 16  
Element(0,1)= 2  
Element(0,2)= 3  
Element(0,3)= 13  
Element(1,0)= 5
```

```
Element(1,1)= 11
Element(1,2)= 10
Element(1,3)= 8
Element(2,0)= 9
Element(2,1)= 7
Element(2,2)= 6
Element(2,3)= 12
Element(3,0)= 4
Element(3,1)= 14
Element(3,2)= 15
Element(3,3)= 1
```

## Using the Native .NET API: The Cell and Struct Example

### Why Use the .NET API With Cell Arrays and Structs?

Using .NET representations of MATLAB struct and cell arrays is recommended if both of these are true:

- You have MATLAB functions on a server with MATLAB struct or cell data types as inputs or outputs
- You do not want or need to install an MCR on your client machines

The native `MWArray`, `MWStructArray`, and `MWCellArray` classes are members of the `MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays.native` namespace.

The class names in this namespace are identical to the class names in the `MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays`. The difference is that the native representation of struct and cell arrays have no methods or properties that require an MCR.

The `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\Examples\VS8\NET` folder has example solutions you can practice building. The `NativeStructCellExample` folder contains native struct and cell examples.

## Building Your Component

This example demonstrates how to deploy a remotable component using native struct and cell arrays. Before you set up the remotable client and server code, build a remotable component.

If you have not yet built the component you want to deploy, see the instructions in “Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool” on page 8-7 or “Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command” on page 8-10.

## The Native .NET Cell and Struct Example

The server application hosts the remote component.

The client application, running in a separate process, accesses the remote component hosted by the server application. Build the server with the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `NativeStructCellServer.csproj`:

- 1 Change the references for the generated component assembly to `component_name\distrib\component_nameNative.dll`.
- 2 Select the appropriate build platform.
- 3 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 4 Build the `NativeStructCellServer` project.
- 5 Supply the configuration file for the `NativeStructCellServer`. The C# code for the server is in the file `NativeStructCellServer.cs`:

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;

namespace NativeStructCellServer
{
    class NativeStructCellServer
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
```

```
        RemotingConfiguration.Configure(@"NativeStructCellServer.exe.config");

        Console.WriteLine("NativeStructCell Server started...");

        Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
}
```

This code reads the associated configuration file to determine:

- Name of the component to host
- Remoting protocol and message formatting to use
- Lease time for the remote component

In addition, the code also signals that the server is active and waits for a carriage return before terminating.

### Coding and Building the Client Application and Configuration File

The client application, running in a separate process, accesses the remote component running in the server application built in “The Native .NET Cell and Struct Example” on page 8-27. Build the remote client using the Microsoft Visual Studio project file `NativeStructCellClient\NativeStructCellClient.csproj` which references both the shared data conversion assembly `matlabroot\toolbox\dotnetbuilder\bin\win32\v2.0\MWArray.dll` and the generated component interface assembly `component_name\distrib\Icomponent_nameNative`. To create the remote client using Microsoft Visual Studio:

- 1 Select the appropriate build platform.
- 2 Select **Debug** or **Release** mode.
- 3 Build the `NativeStructCellClient` project.
- 4 Supply the configuration file for the `NativeStructCellClient`.

**NativeStructCellClient Code.** The C# code for the client is in the file NativeStructCellClient\NativeStructCellClient.cs:

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;
using System.Configuration;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays.native;

using INativeStructCellCompNative;

// This is a simple example that demonstrates the use
// of MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays.native package.
namespace NativeStructCellClient
{
    class NativeStructCellClient
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                RemotingConfiguration.Configure(@"NativeStructCellClient.exe.config");
                String urlServer =
                    ConfigurationSettings.AppSettings["NativeStructCellServer"];
                INativeStructCellClassNative nativeStructCell =
                    (INativeStructCellClassNative)Activator.GetObject(typeof
                        (INativeStructCellClassNative), urlServer);

                MWCellArray field_names = new MWCellArray(1, 2);
                field_names[1, 1] = "Name";
                field_names[1, 2] = "Address";

                Object[] o = nativeStructCell.createEmptyStruct(1, field_names);
                MWStructArray S1 = (MWStructArray)o[0];
                Console.WriteLine("\nEVENT 2: Initialized structure as
                    received in client applications:\n\n{0}" , S1);

                //Convert "Name" value from char[,] to a string since there's no
                    MWCharArray constructor on server that accepts
```

```

//char[,] as input.
char c = ((char[,])S1["Name"])[0, 0];
S1["Name"] = c.ToString();

MWStructArray address = new MWStructArray(new int[] { 1, 1 },
                                           new String[] { "Street", "City", "State", "Zip" });
address["Street", 1] = "3, Apple Hill Drive";
address["City", 1] = "Natick";
address["State", 1] = "MA";
address["Zip", 1] = "01760";

Console.WriteLine("\nUpdating the 'Address' field to :\n\n{0}", address);
Console.WriteLine("\n#####\n");
S1["Address",1] = address;

Object[] o1 = nativeStructCell.updateField(1, S1, "Name");
MWStructArray S2 = (MWStructArray)o1[0];

Console.WriteLine("\nEVENT 5: Final structure as
                  received by client:\n\n{0}" , S2);
Console.WriteLine("\nAddress field: \n\n{0}" , S2["Address",1]);
Console.WriteLine("\n#####\n");
}
catch (Exception exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine(exception.Message);
}
Console.ReadLine();
}
}
}

```

This code does the following:

- The client reads the associated configuration file to get the name and location of the remoteable component.
- The client instantiates the remoteable object using the static `Activator.GetObject` method

- From this point, the remoting client calls methods on the remoteable component exactly as it would call a local component method.

**NativeStructCellClient Configuration File.** The configuration file for the NativeStructCellClient is in the file NativeStructCellClient\NativeStructCellClient.exe.config:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <appSettings>
    <add key="NativeStructCellServer" value=
      "tcp://localhost:1236/NativeStructCellClass.remote" />
  </appSettings>
  <system.runtime.remoting>
    <application>
      <channels>
        <channel name="NativeStructCellChannel" ref="tcp" port="0">
          <clientProviders>
            <formatter ref="binary" />
          </clientProviders>
          <serverProviders>
            <formatter ref="binary" typeFilterLevel="Full" />
          </serverProviders>
        </channel>
      </channels>
    </application>
  </system.runtime.remoting>
</configuration>
```

This code specifies:

- Name of the remote component server and the remote component URI (uniform resource identifier)
- Remoting protocol (TCP/IP) and port number
- Message formatter (binary) and the permissions for the communication channel (full trust)

## Starting the Server Application

Start the server by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX command window and cd to NativeStructCellServer\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug.
- 2 Run NativeStructCellServer.exe. The following output appears:

```
EVENT 1: Initializing the structure on server and sending
         it to client:
         Initialized empty structure:
```

```
         Name: ' '
         Address: []
```

```
#####
```

```
EVENT 3: Partially initialized structure as
         received by server:
```

```
         Name: ' '
         Address: [1x1 struct]
```

```
Address field as initialized from the client:
```

```
         Street: '3, Apple Hill Drive'
         City: 'Natick'
         State: 'MA'
         Zip: '01760'
```

```
#####
```

```
EVENT 4: Updating 'Name' field before sending the
         structure back to the client:
```

```
         Name: 'The MathWorks'
         Address: [1x1 struct]
```



```
#####
```

## Starting the Client Application

Start the client by doing the following:

- 1 Open a DOS or UNIX command window and cd to  
NativeStructCellClient\bin\x86\v2.0\Debug.
- 2 Run NativeStructCellClient.exe. After the MCR initializes, the following output appears:

```
EVENT 2: Initialized structure as received in client applications:
```

```
1x1 struct array with fields:
```

```
    Name  
    Address
```

```
Updating the 'Address' field to :
```

```
1x1 struct array with fields:
```

```
    Street  
    City  
    State  
    Zip
```

```
#####
```

```
EVENT 5: Final structure as received by client:
```

```
1x1 struct array with fields:
```

```
    Name  
    Address
```

```
Address field:
```

```
1x1 struct array with fields:
```

```
    Street  
    City
```

```

State
Zip

```

```
#####
```

## Coding and Building the Client Application and Configuration File with the Native *MWArray*, *MWStructArray*, and *MWCellArray* Classes

**createEmptyStruct.m.** Initialize the structure on the server and send it to the client with the following MATLAB code:

```

function PartialStruct = createEmptyStruct(field_names)

fprintf('EVENT 1: Initializing the structure on server
        and sending it to client:\n');

PartialStruct = struct(field_names{1}, ' ', field_names{2}, []);

fprintf('        Initialized empty structure:\n\n');
disp(PartialStruct);
fprintf('\n#####\n');

```

**updateField.m.** Receive the partially updated structure from the client and add more data to it, before passing it back to the client, with the following MATLAB code:

```

function FinalStruct = updateField(st, field_name)

fprintf('\nEVENT 3: Partially initialized structure as
        received by server:\n\n');

disp(st);
fprintf('Address field as initialized from the client:\n\n');
disp(st.Address);
fprintf('#####\n');

fprintf(['\nEVENT 4: Updating ', field_name, ' '
        field before sending the structure back to the client:\n\n']);
st.(field_name) = 'The MathWorks';

```

```
FinalStruct = st;
disp(FinalStruct);
fprintf('\n#####\n');
```

**NativeStructCellClient.cs.** Create the client C# code:

---

**Note** In this case, you do not need the MCR on the system path.

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text;
using System.Runtime.Remoting;
using System.Configuration;
using MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays.native;

using INativeStructCellCompNative;

// This is a simple example that demonstrates the use of
// MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Arrays.native package.
namespace NativeStructCellClient
{
    class NativeStructCellClient
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                RemotingConfiguration.Configure
                    ("NativeStructCellClient.exe.config");
                String urlServer =
                    ConfigurationSettings.AppSettings["NativeStructCellServer"];
                INativeStructCellClassNative nativeStructCell =
                    (INativeStructCellClassNative)Activator.GetObject(typeof
                        (INativeStructCellClassNative),
                        urlServer);

                MWCellArray field_names = new MWCellArray(1, 2);
                field_names[1, 1] = "Name";
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        field_names[1, 2] = "Address";

        Object[] o = nativeStructCell.createEmptyStruct(1,field_names);
        MWStructArray S1 = (MWStructArray)o[0];
        Console.WriteLine("\nEVENT 2: Initialized structure as received
                           in client applications:\n\n{0}" , S1);

        //Convert "Name" value from char[,] to a string since
        // there's no MWCharArray constructor
        // on server that accepts char[,] as input.
        char c = ((char[,])S1["Name"])[0, 0];
        S1["Name"] = c.ToString();

        MWStructArray address =
            want new MWStructArray(new int[] { 1, 1 },
                new String[] { "Street", "City", "State", "Zip" });
        address["Street", 1] = "3, Apple Hill Drive";
        address["City", 1] = "Natick";
        address["State", 1] = "MA";
        address["Zip", 1] = "01760";

        Console.WriteLine("\nUpdating the
                           'Address' field to :\n\n{0}", address);
        Console.WriteLine("\n#####\n");
        S1["Address",1] = address;

        Object[] o1 = nativeStructCell.updateField(1, S1, "Name");
        MWStructArray S2 = (MWStructArray)o1[0];

        Console.WriteLine("\nEVENT 5: Final structure as received by
                           client:\n\n{0}" , S2);
        Console.WriteLine("\nAddress field: \n\n{0}" , S2["Address",1]);
        Console.WriteLine("\n#####\n");
    }
    catch (Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(exception.Message);
    }
    Console.ReadLine();
}

```

```
    }  
}
```

**NativeStructCellServer.cs.** Create the server C# code:

```
using System;  
using System.Collections.Generic;  
using System.Text;  
using System.Runtime.Remoting;  
  
namespace NativeStructCellServer  
{  
    class NativeStructCellServer  
    {  
        static void Main(string[] args)  
        {  
            RemotingConfiguration.Configure(@"NativeStructCellServer.exe.config");  
  
            Console.WriteLine("NativeStructCell Server started...");  
  
            Console.ReadLine();  
        }  
    }  
}
```



# Troubleshooting

---

This chapter provides some solutions to common problems encountered using the MATLAB Builder NE product.

- “Troubleshooting the Build Process ” on page 9-2
- “Failure to Find a Required File” on page 9-3
- “Diagnostic Messages” on page 9-4

## Troubleshooting the Build Process

In this section...
“Viewing the Latest Build Log” on page 9-2
“Generating Verbose Output” on page 9-2

### Viewing the Latest Build Log

To view the log of your most recent build process, open the build log, which is generated in the intermediate folder for your project. By default, the intermediate folder for a project is *project\_folder/projectname\_without\_ext/src*.

### Generating Verbose Output

Telling the Deployment Tool to generate verbose output provides a more detailed log of each build. These details can assist you in determining the cause of problems you encounter.

To enable verbose output during builds, select **Generate Verbose Output** in the Deployment Tool window.



## Failure to Find a Required File

If your application generates a diagnostic message indicating that a module cannot be found, it could be that the MCR is not located properly on your path. How to fix this problem depends on whether it occurs on a development machine (where you are using the builder to create a component) or target machine (where you are trying to use the component in your application). The required locations are as follows for the MCR according to development versus target machines.

- Make sure that `matlabroot\runtime\architecture` appears on your system path ahead of any other MATLAB installations. (*matlabroot* is your root MATLAB folder.)
- Verify that `mcr_root\ver\runtime\architecture` appears on your system path. (*mcr\_root* is your root MCR folder) and *ver* represents the MCR version number.

## Diagnostic Messages

The following table shows diagnostic messages you might encounter, probable causes for the message, and suggested solutions.

---

**Note** The MATLAB Builder NE product uses the MATLAB Compiler product to generate components. This means that you might see diagnostic messages from MATLAB Compiler. See “Compile-Time Errors” in the MATLAB Compiler documentation for more information about those messages.

---

See the following table for information about some diagnostic messages.

### Diagnostic Messages and Suggested Solutions

Message	Probable Cause	Suggested Solution
LoadLibrary ( <code>"component_name_1_0.dll"</code> ) failed - The specified module could not be found.	You may get this error message while registering the project DLL from the DOS prompt. This usually occurs if the MATLAB product is not on the system path.	See “Failure to Find a Required File” on page 9-3.
	You might also get this error if you try to deploy your component without adding the path for the DLL to the system path on the target machine.	On the target machine where the COM component is to be used: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Use the <code>extractCTF.exe</code> utility to decompress the <code>.ctf</code> file generated by the builder when you built the COM component.</li> <li><b>2</b> Look at the files in the CTF, and note the path for the DLL.</li> <li><b>3</b> Add this path to the system path.</li> </ol>

## Diagnostic Messages and Suggested Solutions (Continued)

Message	Probable Cause	Suggested Solution
		See the MATLAB Compiler documentation for more information about <code>extractctf.exe</code> .
MBUILD.BAT: Error: The chosen compiler does not support building COM objects.	The chosen compiler does not support building COM objects.	Rerun <code>mbuild -setup</code> and choose a supported compiler.
Error in <i>component_name.class_name.x</i> : Error getting data conversion flags.	This is often caused by <code>mwcomutil.dll</code> not being registered.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Open a DOS window.</li> <li><b>2</b> Change folders to <code>matlabroot\runtime\architecture</code>.</li> <li><b>3</b> Run the following command: <code>mwregsvr mwcomutil.dll</code></li> </ol> <p>(<i>matlabroot</i> is your root MATLAB folder.)</p>
Error in VBAProject: ActiveX component can't create object.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Project DLL is not registered.</li> <li>• An incompatible MATLAB DLL exists somewhere on the system path.</li> </ul>	<p>If the DLL is not registered,</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Open a DOS window.</li> <li><b>2</b> Change folders to <code>projectdir\distrib</code>.</li> <li><b>3</b> Run the following command: <code>mwregsvr projectdll.dll</code></li> </ol> <p>(<i>projectdir</i> represents the location of your project files).</p>

## Diagnostic Messages and Suggested Solutions (Continued)

Message	Probable Cause	Suggested Solution
Error in VBAProject: Automation error The specified module could not be found.	This usually occurs if MATLAB is not on the system path.	See “Failure to Find a Required File” on page 9-3.
QueryInterface for interface <COM OBJECT NAME> failed.	You might be using the incorrect number and/or type of function parameters to call into your COM object.	<p>Function calls to COM objects that encapsulate MATLAB functions must have the same number and data type of arguments as the COM object. In general:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a Variant data type for the return type of the COM object.</li> <li>• Use doubles as default numeric input parameters (rather than integers).</li> </ul> <p>You might also use development tools such as OLEVIEW and Object Browser, which ship with Microsoft Visual Studio and Microsoft Visual Basic, respectively, to verify the expected function signature of TypeLib for the COM object.</p>

## Enhanced Error Diagnostics Using mstack Trace

Use this enhanced diagnostic feature to troubleshoot problems that occur specifically during MATLAB code execution.

To implement this feature, use .NET exception handling to invoke the MATLAB function inside of the .NET application, as demonstrated in this try-catch code block:

```

try
{
    Magic magic = new Magic();
    magic.callmakeerror();
}
catch(Exception ex)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception);
}

```

When an error occurs, the MATLAB code stack trace is printed before the Microsoft .NET application stack trace, as follows:

```

... MATLAB code Stack Trace ...
    at
file H:\compiler\g388611\cathy\MagicDemoCSharpApp\bin\Debug\
CallldmakeerrComp_mcr\compiler\g388611\ca
thy\MagicDemoComp\dmakeerror.m,name dmakeerror_error2,line at 14.
    at
file H:\compiler\g388611\cathy\MagicDemoCSharpApp\bin\Debug\
CallldmakeerrComp_mcr\compiler\g388611\ca
thy\MagicDemoComp\dmakeerror.m,name dmakeerror_error1,line at 11.
    at
file H:\compiler\g388611\cathy\MagicDemoCSharpApp\bin\Debug\
CallldmakeerrComp_mcr\compiler\g388611\ca
thy\MagicDemoComp\dmakeerror.m,name dmakeerror,line at 4.
    at
file H:\compiler\g388611\cathy\MagicDemoCSharpApp\bin\Debug\
CallldmakeerrComp_mcr\compiler\g388611\ca
thy\MagicDemoComp\callldmakeerror.m,name callldmakeerror,line at 2.

... .Application Stack Trace ...
    at MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility.MWMCR.EvaluateFunction
(String functionName, Int32 numArgsOut, Int
32 numArgsIn, MWArray[] argsIn)
    at MathWorks.MATLAB.NET.Utility.MWMCR.EvaluateFunction
(Int32 numArgsOut, String functionName, MWA
rray[] argsIn)
    at CallldmakeerrComp.Callldmakeerr.callldmakeerror() in
h:\compiler\g388611\cathy\MagicDemoComp\src\

```

```
Callmakeerr.cs:line 140
  at MathWorks.Demo.MagicSquareApp.MagicDemoApp.Main(String[]
  args) in H:\compiler\g388611\cathy\Ma
  gicDemoCSharpApp\MagicDemoApp.cs:line 52
```

# Reference Information

---

- “Requirements for the MATLAB® Builder NE Product” on page 10-2
- “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4
- “Overview of Data Conversion Classes” on page 10-7
- “MWArray Class Specification” on page 10-14

## Requirements for the MATLAB Builder NE Product

In this section...
“System Requirements ” on page 10-2
“Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2
“Path Modifications Required for Accessibility” on page 10-3
“Limitations and Restrictions” on page 10-3

### System Requirements

System requirements and restrictions on use for the MATLAB Builder NE product are as follows:

- All requirements for the MATLAB Compiler product; see “Installation and Configuration” in the MATLAB Compiler documentation.
- Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 or higher must be installed.
- Either Microsoft Visual Studio 2003, Microsoft Visual Studio 2005, or the corresponding .NET Framework SDK must be available on the target machine.

### Compiler Requirements

You must have the MATLAB and MATLAB Compiler products installed to install the MATLAB Builder NE product.

MATLAB Builder NE is available only on Windows (32-bit and 64-bit versions).

For an up-to-date list of all the compilers supported by MATLAB and MATLAB Compiler, see [http://www.mathworks.com/support/compilers/current\\_release/](http://www.mathworks.com/support/compilers/current_release/).

---

**Note** Before you use MATLAB Builder NE to build COM components, you must run `mbuild -setup` to configure your C/C++ compiler to work with MATLAB Compiler.

---



---

**Caution** When generating unmanaged C++ code on Windows, use only the MSVC compiler. This is the compiler that MathWorks™ uses most frequently in test.

---

## **Path Modifications Required for Accessibility**

In order to use some screen-readers or assistive technologies, such as JAWS®, you must add the following DLLs to your Windows path:

```
JavaAccessBridge.dll  
WindowsAccessBridge.dll
```

You may not be able to use such technologies without doing so.

## **Limitations and Restrictions**

In general, limitations and restrictions on the use of the builder are the same as those for MATLAB Compiler. See the MATLAB Compiler documentation for details.

## **Using CGI Scripts**

As of Release 2006b, CGI scripts can call MATLAB using the Engine API interface if you have a concurrent or designated license.

## Data Conversion Rules

In this section...
“Managed Types to MATLAB Arrays” on page 10-4
“MATLAB Arrays to Managed Types” on page 10-5
“Character and String Conversion” on page 10-5
“Unsupported MATLAB Array Types” on page 10-6

### Managed Types to MATLAB Arrays

The following table lists the data conversion rules used when converting native .NET types to MATLAB arrays.

---

**Note** The conversion rules listed in these tables apply to scalars, vectors, matrices, and multidimensional arrays of the native types listed.

---

#### Conversion Rules: Managed Types to MATLAB Arrays

Native .NET Type	MATLAB Array	Comments
System.Double	double	—
System.Single	single	Available only when the <code>makeDouble</code> constructor argument is set to <code>false</code> . The default is <code>true</code> , which creates a MATLAB double type.
System.Int64	int64	
System.Int32	int32	
System.Int16	int16	
System.Byte	int8	
System.String	char	None
System.Boolean	logical	None

## MATLAB Arrays to Managed Types

The following table lists the data conversion rules used when converting MATLAB arrays to native .NET types.

---

**Note** The conversion rules apply to scalars, vectors, matrices, and multidimensional arrays of the listed MATLAB types.

---

### Conversion Rules: MATLAB Arrays to Managed Types

MATLAB Type	.NET Type (Primitive)	.NET Type (Class)	Comments
cell	N/A	MWCellArray	Cell and struct arrays have no corresponding .NET type.
structure	N/A	MWStructArray	
char	System.String	MWCharArray	
double	System.Double	MWNumericArray	Default is type double.
single	System.Single	MWNumericArray	
uint64	System.Int64	MWNumericArray	Not supported
uint32	System.Int32	MWNumericArray	Not supported
uint16	System.Int16	MWNumericArray	Not supported
uint8	System.Byte	MWNumericArray	None
logical	System.Boolean	MWLogicalArray	None
Function handle	N/A	N/A	None
Object	N/A	N/A	None

## Character and String Conversion

A native .NET string is converted to a 1-by- $N$  MATLAB character array, with  $N$  equal to the length of the .NET string.

An array of .NET strings (`string[]`) is converted to an  $M$ -by- $N$  character array, with  $M$  equal to the number of elements in the string (`[]`) array and  $N$  equal to the maximum string length in the array.

Higher dimensional arrays of `String` are similarly converted.

In general, an  $N$ -dimensional array of `String` is converted to an  $N+1$  dimensional MATLAB character array with appropriate zero padding where supplied strings have different lengths.

## Unsupported MATLAB Array Types

The MATLAB Builder NE product does not support the following MATLAB array types because they are not CLS-compliant:

- `int8`
- `uint16`
- `uint32`
- `uint64`

---

**Note** While it is permissible to pass these types as arguments to a MATLAB Builder NE component, it is not permissible to return these types, as they are not CLS compliant.

---

## Overview of Data Conversion Classes

### In this section...

“Overview” on page 10-7

“Returning Data from MATLAB to Managed Code” on page 10-8

“Example of MWNumericArray in a .NET Application” on page 10-8

“Interfaces Generated by the MATLAB® Builder NE Product” on page 10-8

### Overview

The data conversion classes are

- MWArray
- MWIndexArray
- MWCellArray
- MWCharacterArray
- MWLogicalArray
- MWNumericArray
- MWStructArray

---

**Note** For complete reference information about the MWArray class hierarchy, see the MWArray Class Library Reference (available online only).

---

MWArray and MWIndexArray are abstract classes. The other classes represent the standard MATLAB array types: cell, character, logical, numeric, and struct. Each class provides constructors and a set of properties and methods for creating and accessing the state of the underlying MATLAB array.

There are some data types (cell arrays, structure arrays, and arrays of complex numbers) commonly used in the MATLAB product that are not available as native .NET types. To represent these data types, you must create an instance of either MWCellArray, MWStructArray, or MWNumericArray.

## Returning Data from MATLAB to Managed Code

All data returned from a MATLAB function to a .NET method is represented as an instance of the appropriate `MWArray` subclass. For example, a MATLAB cell array is returned as an `MWCellArray` object.

Return data is *not* automatically converted to a native array. If you need to get the corresponding native array type, call the `ToArray` method, which converts a MATLAB array to the appropriate native data type, except for cell and struct arrays. See “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9.

## Example of `MWNumericArray` in a .NET Application

Here is a code fragment that shows how to convert a double value (5.0) to a `MWNumericArray` type:

```
MWNumericArray arraySize = 5.0;
magicSquare = magic.MakeSqr(arraySize);
```

After the double value is converted and assigned to the variable `arraySize`, you can use the `arraySize` argument with the MATLAB based method without further conversion. In this example, the MATLAB based method is `magic.MakeSqr(arraySize)`.

## Interfaces Generated by the MATLAB Builder NE Product

For each MATLAB function that you specify as part of a .NET component, the builder generates an API based on the MATLAB function signature, as follows:

- A *single output* signature that assumes that only a single output is required and returns the result in a single `MWArray` rather than an array of `MWArrays`.
- A *standard* signature that specifies inputs of type `MWArray` and returns values as an array of `MWArray`.
- A *feval* signature that includes both input and output arguments in the argument list rather than returning outputs as a return value. Output arguments are specified first, followed by the input arguments.

## Single Output API

**Note** Typically you use the single output interface for MATLAB functions that return a single argument. You can also use the single output interface when you want to use the output of a function as the input to another function.

For each MATLAB function, the builder generates a wrapper class that has overloaded methods to implement the various forms of the generic MATLAB function call. The single output API for a MATLAB function returns a single `MWArray` value.

For example, the following table shows a generic function `foo` along with the single output API that the builder generates for its several forms.

Generic MATLAB function	<pre>function [Out1, Out2, ..., varargout] =     foo(In1, In2, ..., InN, varargin)</pre>
API if there are no input arguments	<pre>public MWArray foo()</pre>
API if there are one or more input arguments	<pre>public MWArray foo(     MWArray In1,     MWArray In2     ...     MWArray inN)</pre>
API if there are optional input arguments	<pre>public MWArray foo(     MWArray In1,     MWArray In2,     ...,     MWArray inN     params MWArray[] varargin )</pre>

In the example, the input arguments `In1`, `In2`, and `inN` are of type `MWArray` objects.

Similarly, in the case of optional arguments, the `params` arguments are of type `MWArray`. (The `varargin` argument is similar to the `varargin` function in MATLAB — it allows the user to pass a variable number of arguments.)

---

**Note** When you call a class method in your .NET application, specify all required inputs first, followed by any optional arguments.

Functions having a single integer input require an explicit cast to type `MWNumericArray` to distinguish the method signature from a standard interface signature that has no input arguments.

---

### Standard API

Typically you use the standard interface for MATLAB functions that return multiple output values.

The standard calling interface returns an array of `MWArray` objects rather than a single array object.

The standard API for a generic function with none, one, more than one, or a variable number of arguments, is shown in the following table.

Generic MATLAB function	<code>function [Out1, Out2, ..., varargout] = foo(In1, In2, ..., InN, varargin)</code>
API if there are no input arguments	<code>public MWArray[] foo(int numArgsOut)</code>
API if there is one input argument	<code>public MWArray [] foo(int numArgsOut, MWArray In1)</code>



API if there are two to $N$ input arguments	<pre>public MArray[] foo(     int numArgsOut,     MArray In1,     MArray In2,     ...     MArray InN )</pre>
API if there are optional arguments, represented by the <code>varargin</code> argument	<pre>public MArray[] foo(     int numArgsOut,     MArray in1,     MArray in2,     ...,     MArray InN,     params MArray[] varargin )</pre>

Details about the arguments for these samples of standard signatures are shown in the following table.

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Details</b>
<i>numArgsOut</i>	Number of outputs	<p>An integer indicating the number of outputs you want the method to return.</p> <p>The value of <i>numArgsOut</i> must be less than or equal to the MATLAB function <code>nargout</code>.</p> <p>The <i>numArgsOut</i> argument must always be the first argument in the list.</p>
<i>In1, In2, ...InN</i>	Required input arguments	<p>All arguments that follow <i>numArgsOut</i> in the argument list are inputs to the method being called.</p> <p>Specify all required inputs first. Each required input must be of type <code>MArray</code> or one of its derived types.</p>

Argument	Description	Details
<i>varargin</i>	Optional inputs	You can also specify optional inputs if your MATLAB code uses the <i>varargin</i> input: list the optional inputs, or put them in an <code>MWArray[]</code> argument, placing the array last in the argument list.
Out1, Out2, ...OutN	Output arguments	With the standard calling interface, all output arguments are returned as an array of <code>MWArrays</code> .

### feval API

In addition to the methods in the single API and the standard API, in most cases, the builder produces an additional overloaded method. If the original MATLAB code contains no output arguments, then the builder will not generate the `feval` method interface.

For a function with the following structure,

```
function [Out1, Out2, ..., varargout] =
    foo(In1, In2, ..., InN, varargin)
```

The builder generates the following API, known as the *feval interface*,

```
public void foo
    (int numArgsOut,
     ref MWArray [] ArgsOut,
     MWArray[] ArgsIn)
```

where the arguments are as follows:

<code>numArgsOut</code>	Number of outputs	<p>Same as standard interface.</p> <p>An integer indicating the number of outputs you want to return.</p> <p>This number generally matches the number of output arguments that follow. The <code>varargout</code> array counts as just one argument, if present.</p>
<code>ref MArray [] ArgsOut</code>	Output arguments	<p>Following <code>numArgsOut</code> are all the outputs of the original MATLAB code, each listed in the same order as they appear on the left side of the original MATLAB code.</p> <p>A <code>ref</code> attribute prefaces all output arguments indicating that these arrays are passed by reference.</p>
<code>MArray[] ArgsIn</code>	Input arguments	<p><code>MArray</code> types or a supported .NET primitive type.</p> <p>When you pass an instance of an <code>MArray</code> type, the underlying MATLAB array is passed directly to the called function. Native types are first converted to <code>MArray</code> types.</p>

## **MWArray Class Specification**

For complete reference information about the `MWArray` class hierarchy, see the `MWArray Class Library Reference` (available online only).

See “Specifying Component Assembly and Namespace” on page 3-3 for information about referencing the classes in your .NET programming environment.

# Function Reference

---

# componentinfo

---

**Purpose** Query system registry about COM component created with MATLAB Builder NE

**Syntax**

```
info = componentinfo
info = componentinfo(component_name)
info = componentinfo(component_name, major_revision_number)
info = componentinfo(component_name, major_revision_number,
    minor_revision_number)
```

**Arguments**

<i>component_name</i>	MATLAB string naming the COM component created by MATLAB Builder NE. Names are case sensitive. If the argument is not supplied, information is returned on all installed components.
<i>major_revision_number</i>	Component major revision number. If the argument is not supplied, information is returned on all major revisions.
<i>minor_revision_number</i>	Component minor revision number. Default value is 0.

**Description**

`info = componentinfo` returns information for all components installed on the system.

`info = componentinfo(component_name)` returns information for all revisions of *component\_name*.

`info = componentinfo(component_name, major_revision_number)` returns information for the most recent minor revision corresponding to *major\_revision\_number* of *component\_name*.

`info = componentinfo(component_name, major_revision_number, minor_revision_number)` returns information for the specific major and minor version of *component\_name*.

The return value is an array of structures representing all the registry and type information needed to load and use the component.

When you supply a component name, *major\_revision\_number* and *minor\_revision\_number* are interpreted as shown next.

Value	Information Returned
> 0	Information on a specific major and minor revision.
0	Information on the most recent revision. When omitted, <i>minor_revision_number</i> is assumed to be 0.
< 0	Information on all versions.

This table describes the fields in componentinfo.

## Registry Information Returned by componentinfo

Field	Description
Name	Component name.
TypeLib	Component type library.
LIBID	Component type library GUID.
MajorRev	Major version number .
MinorRev	Minor version number.
FileName	Type library file name and path. Since all the builder components have the type library bound into the DLL, this file name is the same as the DLL name and path.

## Registry Information Returned by componentinfo (Continued)

Field	Description
Interfaces	<p>An array of structures defining all interface definitions in the type library. Each structure contains two fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Name - Interface name.</li><li>• IID - Interface GUID.</li></ul>
CoClasses	<p>An array of structures defining all COM classes in the component. Each structure contains these fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Name - Class name.</li><li>• CLSID - GUID of the class.</li><li>• ProgID - Version-dependent program ID.</li><li>• VerIndProgID - Version-independent program ID.</li><li>• InprocServer32 - Full name and path to component DLL.</li><li>• Methods - A structure containing function prototypes of all class methods defined for this interface. This structure contains four fields:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ IDL - An array of Interface Description Language function prototypes.</li><li>▪ M - An array of MATLAB function prototypes.</li><li>▪ C - An array of C-language function prototypes.</li><li>▪ VB - An array of VBA function prototypes.</li></ul></li><li>• Properties - A cell array containing the names of all class properties.</li><li>• Events - A structure containing function prototypes of all events defined for this class. This structure contains four fields:</li></ul>



## Registry Information Returned by componentinfo (Continued)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ IDL - An array of Interface Description Language function prototypes.</li> <li>▪ M - An array of MATLAB function prototypes.</li> <li>▪ C - An array of C-language function prototypes.</li> <li>▪ VB - An array of VBA function prototypes.</li> </ul>

## Usage

Use the `componentinfo` function to get information (such as class name, program ID) to pass on to users of a component that you create.

The `componentinfo` function also provides a record of changes made to the registry on your development machine. This information might be useful for debugging if you run into problems.

## Examples

Function Call	Returned Information
<code>Info = componentinfo</code>	Information for all installed components.
<code>Info = componentinfo('mycomponent')</code>	Information for all revisions of <code>mycomponent</code> .
<code>Info = componentinfo('mycomponent',1,0)</code>	Information for revision 1.0 of <code>mycomponent</code> .

# deploytool

---

**Purpose** Open GUI for MATLAB Builder NE and MATLAB Compiler

**Syntax** `deploytool`

**Description** The `deploytool` command opens the Deployment Tool window, which is the graphical user interface (GUI) for the MATLAB Builder NE and MATLAB Compiler products.

See “Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9 to get started using the Deployment Tool to create .NET and COM components, and see the MATLAB Compiler documentation for information about using the Deployment Tool to create standalone applications and libraries.

See Chapter 1, “Getting Started”, for more information about deploying with the GUI.

<b>Desired Result</b>	<b>Command</b>
Starts Deployment Tool GUI with the <b>New/Open</b> dialog active	<code>deploytool</code> (default) or <code>deploytool -n</code>
Starts Deployment Tool GUI and loads <i>project_name</i>	<code>deploytool <i>project_name</i>.prj</code>
Starts Deployment Tool command line interface and builds <i>project_name</i> after initializing	<code>deploytool -build <i>project_name</i>.prj</code>

<b>Desired Result</b>	<b>Command</b>
Starts Deployment Tool command line interface and packages <code>project_name</code> after initializing	<code>deploytool -package <i>project_name</i>.prj</code>
Displays MATLAB Help for the <code>deploytool</code> command	<code>deploytool -?</code>

# figToImStream

---

**Purpose** Stream out figure “snapshot” as byte array encoded in format specified, creating signed byte array in .png format

**Syntax** `output type = figToImStream ('fighandle', figure_handle, 'imageFormat', image_format, 'outputType', output_type)`

**Description** The `output type = figToImStream ('fighandle', figure_handle, 'imageFormat', image_format, 'outputType', output_type)` command also accepts user-defined variables for any of the input arguments, passed as a comma-separated list

The size and position of the printed output depends on the figure's `PaperPosition[mode]` properties.

**Options** `figToImStream('figHandle', Figure_Handle, ...)` allows you to specify the figure output to be used. The Default is the current image  
`figToImStream('imageFormat', [png|jpg|bmp|gif])` allows you to specify the converted image format. Default value is `png`.  
`figToImStream('outputType', [int8!uint8])` allows you to specify an output byte data type. `uint8` (unsigned byte) is used primarily for .NET primitive byte. Default value is `uint8`.

**Examples** Convert the current figure to a signed png byte array:

```
surf(peaks)
bytes = figToImStream
```

Convert a specific figure to an unsigned bmp byte array:

```
f = figure;
surf(peaks);
bytes = figToImStream( 'figHandle', f, ...
                      'imageFormat', 'bmp', ...
                      'outputType', 'uint8' );
```

**Purpose**

Invoke MATLAB Compiler

**Syntax**

```
mcc -W 'dotnet:component_name,class_name,  
0.0|2.0, Private|Encryption_Key_Path'  
file1[file2...fileN]  
[class{class_name:file1 [,file2,...,fileN]},...]  
[-d output_dir_path]  
-T link:lib
```

**Description**

mcc is the MATLAB command that invokes the MATLAB Compiler product. You can issue the mcc command either from the MATLAB command prompt (MATLAB mode) or the DOS or UNIX command line (standalone mode).

mcc prepares MATLAB file(s) for deployment outside of the MATLAB environment. When used with the MATLAB Builder NE product, wrapper files can be used with all CLS-compliant languages, such as C#, Microsoft Visual Basic .NET, and C++ with Managed Extensions.

For each MATLAB file, the main function is a method of the wrapper class generated by MATLAB Builder NE.

**Options**

The -W option is used when running mcc with MATLAB Builder NE.

For a complete list of all mcc command options, see mcc in the MATLAB Compiler User's Guide documentation.

-W

Tells the compiler to create a wrapper function. This option takes a string argument that specifies the following characteristics of the component.

<b>-W String Elements</b>	<b>Description</b>
dotnet:	Keyword that tells the compiler the type of component to create, followed by a colon. Specify <code>dotnet</code> to create a .NET component.
<i>component_name</i>	Specifies the name of the component and its namespace, which is a period-separated list, such as <code>companyname.groupname.component</code> .
<i>class_name</i>	Specifies the name of the .NET class to be created.
0.0 2.0	Specifies the version of the .NET Framework you want to use to compile the component. You can specify either: 0.0 — Use the latest supported version on the target machine. 2.0 — Use Version 2.0 of the framework.
Private Encryption_Key_Path	Specifies whether the component to be created is a private assembly or a shared assembly. To create a shared assembly, you must specify the full path to the encryption key file used to sign the assembly.
local remote	Specifies the remoting type of the component. See Chapter 8, “Sharing Components Across Distributed Applications Using .NET Remoting”.

*file1* [*file2*...*fileN*]

Specifies the MATLAB files that are to be encapsulated as methods in the class being created (*class\_name*).

`class{class_name:file1 [,file2,...,fileN]}`,...

(Optional) Specifies additional classes that you want to include in the component. To use this option, you specify the class name, followed by a colon, and then the names of the files you want to include in the class. You can include this multiple times to specify multiple classes.

- 
- `[-d output_dir_path]`  
(Optional) Tells the builder to create a folder and copy the output files to it. If you use `mcc` instead of the Deployment Tool, the `project_folder\src` and `project_folder\distrib` folders are not automatically created.
- `-C`  
Overrides automatically embedding the CTF archive in builder-generated .NET or COM components. See for details.
- `-T`  
Specifies the output type. To create a .NET component, specify the keyword `link:lib`, which links objects into a shared library (DLL).





# Creating and Installing COM Components

---

- “Building a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-2
- “Packaging a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-4
- “About Embedded CTF Archives” on page 12-5
- “Using the Command-Line Interface” on page 12-6
- “Installing COM Components on a Target Computer” on page 12-9

## Building a Deployable COM Component

- 1** Create a deployment project. A *project* is a collection of files you bundle together under a project file name (.prj file) for your convenience in the Deployment Tool. Using a project makes it easy for you to build and run an application many times—effectively testing it—until it is ready for deployment.
  - a** Type the name of your project in the **Name** field.
  - b** Enter the location of the project in the **Location** field. Alternately, navigate to the location.
  - c** Select the target for the deployment project from the **Target** drop-down menu.
  - d** Click **OK**.
  
- 2** On the **Build** tab, add what you want to compile, and any supporting files, to the project.
  - a** Do the following, depending on the type of application you are building:
    - If you are building a COM application or Microsoft Excel add-in, click **Add files**.
    - If you are building a .NET application, click **Add class**. Type the name of the class in the Class Name field, designated by the letter “c”: For this class, add files you want to compile by clicking **Add files**. To add another class, click **Add class**.
  - b** Add any supporting files. For example, you can add the following files, as appropriate for your project:
    - Functions called using `eval` (or variants of `eval`)
    - Functions not on the MATLAB path
    - Code you want to remain private
    - Code from other programs that you want to compile and link into the main file

If you want to include additional files, in the Shared Resources and Helper Files area, click **Add files/directories**. Click **Open** to select the file or files.

**3** When you complete your changes, click the Build button.

### Packaging a Deployable COM Component

- 1** On the **Package** tab, add the MATLAB Compiler Runtime (the MCR) by clicking **Add MCR**.
- 2** Next, add others files useful for end users. The `readme.txt` file contains important information about others files useful for end users. To package additional files or folders, click **Add file/directories**, select the file or folder you want to package, and click **Open**.
- 3** In the Deployment Tool, click the Packaging button.
- 4** After packaging, the package resides in the `distrib` subfolder. On Windows, the package is a self-extracting executable. On platforms other than Windows, it is a `.zip` file. Verify that the contents of the `distrib` folder contains the files you specified.

## About Embedded CTF Archives

As of R2008b, the MATLAB Builder NE product now embeds the CTF archive within generated components, by default. This offers convenient deployment of a single output file since all encrypted MATLAB file data is now contained within the component.

For information on how to produce a separate CTF archive (the default behavior before R2008b), see “Overriding Default CTF Archive Embedding for Components Using the MCR Component Cache” on page 3-24.

## Using the Command-Line Interface

A MATLAB class cannot be directly compiled into a COM object. You can, however, use a user-generated class inside an MATLAB file and build a COM object from that file. You can use the MATLAB command-line interface instead of the GUI to create COM objects. Do this by issuing the `mcc` command with options. If you use `mcc`, you do not create a project.

---

**Note** See the MATLAB Compiler documentation for a complete description of the `mcc` command and its options.

---

The following table provides an overview of some `mcc` options related to components, along with syntax and examples of their usage.

### Using the Command Line to Create COM Components

Action to Perform	mcc Option to Use	Description
Create component that has one class.	-W com	The W option with com as the type controls the generation of wrapper files, which you can use to support components.
	<p><b>Syntax</b></p> <pre>mcc -W 'com:&lt;component_name&gt;[,&lt;class_name&gt;[,&lt;major&gt;.&lt;minor&gt;]]'</pre> <p>An unspecified <code>&lt;class_name&gt;</code> defaults to <code>&lt;component_name&gt;</code>, and an unspecified version number defaults to the latest version built or 1.0, if there is no previous version.</p>	
	<p><b>Example</b></p> <pre>mcc -W 'com:mycomponent,myclass,1.0' -T link:lib foo.m bar.m</pre> <p>The example creates a COM component called <code>mycomponent</code>, which contains a single COM class named <code>myclass</code> with methods <code>foo</code> and <code>bar</code>, and a version of 1.0.</p>	

## Using the Command Line to Create COM Components (Continued)

Action to Perform	mcc Option to Use	Description
Add additional classes to a COM component.	Not needed	A separate COM named <class_name> is created for each class argument that is passed.  Following the <class_name> parameter is a comma-separated list of source files that are encapsulated as methods for the class.
	<b>Syntax</b>	<code>class{&lt;class_name&gt;:[file, [file,...]]}</code>
	<b>Example</b>	<code>mcc -B 'ccom:mycomponent,myclass,1.0' foo.m bar.m class{myclass2:foo2.m, bar2.m}</code>  The example creates a COM component named mycomponent with two classes: myclass has methods foo and bar, and myclass2 has methods foo2 and bar2. The version is version 1.0.
Simplify the command-line input for components.	<code>-B ccom:</code>	Uses the bundle file.
	<b>Syntax</b>	<code>mcc -B '&lt;filename&gt;'[:&lt;a1&gt;,&lt;a2&gt;,...,&lt;an&gt;]</code>
	<b>Example</b>	<code>mcc -B 'ccom:mycomponent,myclass,1.0' foo.m bar.m</code>
Control how each COM class uses the MCR.	<code>-S</code>	By default, a new MCR instance is created for each instance of each COM class in the component. Use <code>-S</code> to change the default.  This option tells the builder to create a single MCR at the time when the first COM class is instantiated. This MCR is reused and shared among all subsequent class instances, resulting in more efficient memory usage and eliminating the MCR startup cost in each subsequent class instantiation.  When using <code>-S</code> , note that all class instances share a single MATLAB workspace and share global variables in the MATLAB files used to build the component. Therefore, properties of a

**Using the Command Line to Create COM Components (Continued)**

Action to Perform	mcc Option to Use	Description
		<p>COM class behave as static properties instead of instance-wise properties.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> The default behavior dictates that a new MCR be created for each instance of a class, so when the class is destroyed, the MCR is destroyed as well. If you want to retain the state of global variables (such as those allocated for drawing figures, for instance), use the <code>-S</code> option.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Example</b>  <code>mcc -S -B 'ccom:mycomponent,myclass,1.0' foo.m bar.m</code></p> <p>The example creates a COM component called <code>mycomponent</code> containing a single COM class named <code>myclass</code> with methods <code>foo</code> and <code>bar</code>, and a version of 1.0.</p> <p>When multiple instances of this class are instantiated in an application, only one MCR is initialized, and it is shared by each instance.</p>
<p>Create subfolders needed for deployment and copy associated files to them.</p>	<p><code>-d</code></p> <hr/> <p><b>Syntax</b>  <code>-d foldername</code></p>	<p>The <code>\src</code> and <code>\distrib</code> subfolders are needed to package components.</p>



## Installing COM Components on a Target Computer

To install and deploy a COM object created with MATLAB Builder NE, perform the following steps:

- 1** Install the MATLAB Compiler Runtime as described in the *MATLAB Compiler User's Guide*.
- 2** Build and package as described in “Building a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-2 and “Packaging a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-4.
- 3** Copy the package to the target computer and run the package.
- 4** From a Windows command prompt on the target system, navigate to the folder where you saved the package. If you use the command `dir`, you should see the `.dll` created for your COM object. You will need to register the `.dll` manually using the command `regsvr32`, as follows:

```
regsvr32 myCom_1_0.dll
```



# Programming with COM Components Created by the MATLAB Builder NE Product

---

- “General Techniques” on page 13-2
- “Registering and Referencing the Utility Library” on page 13-4
- “Creating an Instance of a Class in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 13-5
- “Calling the Methods of a Class Instance” on page 13-8
- “Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program” on page 13-11
- “Using a COM Component in a .NET Application” on page 13-14
- “Adding Events to COM Objects” on page 13-21
- “Passing Arguments ” on page 13-26
- “Using Flags to Control Array Formatting and Data Conversion” on page 13-29
- “Using MATLAB Global Variables in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 13-36
- “Blocking Execution of a Console Application that Creates Figures” on page 13-39
- “Obtaining Registry Information” on page 13-42
- “Handling Errors During a Method Call” on page 13-44

## General Techniques

After you package and install a COM component created by the MATLAB Builder NE product, you can access the component in any program that supports COM, such as Microsoft Visual Basic, Microsoft® Visual C++®, or Visual C#.

Your code module must do the following:

- Load the components created by the builder
  - “Registering and Referencing the Utility Library” on page 13-4
  - “Creating an Instance of a Class in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 13-5
- Call methods of the component class
  - “Calling the Methods of a Class Instance” on page 13-8
  - “Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program” on page 13-11
  - “Adding Events to COM Objects” on page 13-21
  - “Obtaining Registry Information” on page 13-42
- Deal with data conversion and parameter passing
  - “Passing Arguments ” on page 13-26
  - “Using Flags to Control Array Formatting and Data Conversion” on page 13-29
  - “Using MATLAB Global Variables in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 13-36
- Process errors
  - “Handling Errors During a Method Call” on page 13-44

---

**Note** These topics provide general information on how to integrate COM components created with the builder into your COM-compliant programs. The presentation focuses on the special programming techniques needed for components based on the MATLAB product and generated by the builder. It assumes that you have a working knowledge of the programming language used in these programs.

For information about programming with COM objects in Microsoft Visual Studio, see articles in the MSDN Library, such as *Calling COM Components from .NET Clients*.

---

## Registering and Referencing the Utility Library

The `MWComUtil` library provided with the MATLAB Builder NE product is freely distributable. The `MWComUtil` library includes seven classes and three enumerated types. These utilities are required for array processing, and they provide type definitions used in data conversion.

The library is contained in the file `mwcomutil.dll`. It must be registered once on each machine that uses components created with the builder.

Register the `MWComUtil` library at the DOS command prompt with the command:

```
mwregsvr mwcomutil.dll
```

To use the types in the library, make sure that you reference the `MWComUtil` library in your current project:

- 1** Select **Tools > References**.
- 2** Select **MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library**.

---

**Note** You must specify the full path of the component when calling `mwregsvr`, or make the call from the folder in which the component resides.

---

## Creating an Instance of a Class in Microsoft Visual Basic

### In this section...

“Advantages and Disadvantages” on page 13-5

“CreateObject Function” on page 13-5

“Microsoft® Visual Basic New Operator” on page 13-6

“Advantages of Each Technique” on page 13-7

“Declaring a Reusable Class Instance” on page 13-7

### Advantages and Disadvantages

Each technique listed here has advantages and disadvantages.

For an example of creating a class instance in Microsoft Visual C++, see “Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program” on page 13-11.

### CreateObject Function

This method uses the Microsoft Visual Basic application program interface (API) CreateObject function to create an instance of the class.

- 1** Dimension a variable of type Object to hold a reference to the class instance.
- 2** Call CreateObject with the Program ID (ProgID) for the class as an argument.

Here is a programming example:

```
Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant) As Variant
    Dim aClass As Object

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
    ' (call some methods on aClass)
    Exit Function
Handle_Error:
```

```
foo = Err.Description  
End Function
```

## Microsoft Visual Basic New Operator

This method uses the Microsoft Visual Basic New operator on a variable explicitly dimensioned as the class to be created.

- 1** Make sure that you reference the type library containing the class in the current Visual Basic project.
  - a** Open the Visual Basic editor.
  - b** Select **Project > References > Available References**.
  - c** Select the necessary type library.
- 2** Dimension the class instance.
- 3** Use New to instantiate the class with a particular name.

The following sample function, `foo`, shows how to use the New operator to create a class instance:

```
Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant) As Variant  
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass  
  
    On Error Goto Handle_Error  
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass  
    ' (call some methods on aClass)  
    Exit Function  
Handle_Error:  
    foo = Err.Description  
End Function
```

In this example, the class instance could be dimensioned as simply `myclass`. The full declaration in the form `<component-name>.<class-name>` guards against name collisions that could occur if other libraries in the current project contain types named `myclass`.



## Advantages of Each Technique

Both techniques (using `CreateObject` and using `New`) are equivalent in the way they function, but each has different advantages. The first technique does not require a reference to the type library in the Visual Basic project, while the second results in faster code execution. The second technique has the added advantage of enabling **Auto-List-Members** and **Auto-Quick-Info** in the Visual Basic editor to help you work with your classes.

## Declaring a Reusable Class Instance

In the previous examples, the class instance used to call the method is a local variable within a procedure. Thus a new class instance is created and destroyed for each call to the method. As an alternative, you can declare a single module-scoped class instance that is reused by all function calls. The next example shows this technique:

```
Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass

Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant) As Variant
    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    If aClass Is Nothing Then
        Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass
    End If
    ' (call some methods on aClass)
    Exit Function
Handle_Error:
    foo = Err.Description
End Function
```

## Calling the Methods of a Class Instance

### In this section...

“Standard Mapping Technique” on page 13-8

“Variant” on page 13-9

“Examples of Passing Input and Output Parameters” on page 13-9

### Standard Mapping Technique

After you create a class instance, you can call the class methods to access the encapsulated MATLAB functions. The MATLAB Builder NE product uses a standard technique to map the original MATLAB function syntax to the method’s argument list. This standard mapping technique is as follows:

- `nargout`

When a method has output arguments, the first argument is always `nargout`, which is of type `Long`. This input parameter passes the normal MATLAB `nargout` parameter to the encapsulated function and specifies how many outputs are requested. Methods that do not have output arguments do not pass a `nargout` argument.

- Output parameters

Following `nargout` are the output parameters listed in the same order as they appear on the left side of the original MATLAB function.

- Input parameters

Next come the input parameters listed in the same order as they appear on the right side of the original MATLAB function.

For example, the most generic MATLAB function is:

```
function [Y1, Y2, ..., varargout] = foo(X1, X2, ..., varargin)
```

This function maps directly to the following Microsoft Visual Basic signature:

```
Sub foo(nargout As Long, _
        Y1 As Variant, _
        Y2 As Variant, _
```

```

:
:
varargout As Variant, _
X1 As Variant, _
X2 As Variant, _
:
:
varargin As Variant)

```

See “Calling Conventions” on page 15-23 for more details and examples of the standard mapping from MATLAB functions to COM class method calls.

## Variant

All input and output arguments are typed as `Variant`, the default Visual Basic data type. The `Variant` type can hold any of the basic Visual Basic types, arrays of any type, and object references. See “Data Conversion” on page 15-9 for details about the conversion of any basic type to and from MATLAB data types.

In general, you can supply any Visual Basic type as an argument to a class method, with the exception of Visual Basic User Defined Types (UDTs).

When you pass a simple `Variant` type as an output parameter, the called method allocates the received data and frees the original contents of the `Variant`. In this case it is sufficient to dimension each output argument as a single `Variant`. When an object type (like an `Excel Range`) is passed as an output parameter, the object reference is passed in both directions, and the object’s `Value` property receives the data.

## Examples of Passing Input and Output Parameters

The following examples show how to pass input and output parameters to the builder component class methods in Visual Basic.

The first example is a function, `foo`, that takes two arguments and returns one output argument. The `foo` function dispatches a call to a class method that corresponds to a MATLAB function of the form `function y = foo(x1,x2)`.

```
Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant) As Variant
```

```
Dim aClass As Object
Dim y As Variant

On Error Goto Handle_Error
Set aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
Call aClass.foo(1,y,x1,x2)
foo = y
Exit Function
Handle_Error:
foo = Err.Description
End Function
```

The second example rewrites the `foo` function as a subroutine:

```
Sub foo(Xout As Variant, X1 As Variant, X2 As Variant)
Dim aClass As Object

On Error Goto Handle_Error
Set aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
Call aClass.foo(1,Xout,X1,X2)
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub
```

## Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program

### In this section...

“Using the MATLAB® Builder NE Product to Create the Object” on page 13-11

“Using the Component in a Visual C++ Program” on page 13-12

---

**Note** You must choose a Microsoft compiler to compile and use any COM object.

---

### Using the MATLAB Builder NE Product to Create the Object

Build the COM object as follows:

- 1 Start the MATLAB product.
- 2 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in MATLAB:

```
mbuild -setup
```

Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.


- 3 Open the MATLAB Editor and create a file named `adddoubles.m` with the following MATLAB code:

```
function z=adddoubles(x,y)
z=x+y;
```

- 4 In the MATLAB Command Window, issue the following command to open the Deployment Tool:

```
deploytool
```

- 5 Create a project named `mycomponent` in any location you want.

- 6 Add `adddoubles.m` to the `mycomponentclass` folder. This means that the MATLAB function, `adddoubles`, will be a method in `mycomponentclass`.
- 7 Click the  icon in the Deployment Tool toolbar.

The builder generates a self-registering COM object that you can use in your Visual C++® code.

## Using the Component in a Visual C++ Program

Use the COM object you have created as follows:

- 1 Create a Visual C++ program in a file named `matlab_com_example.cpp` with the following code:

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;

// include the following files generated by MATLAB Builder NE
#include "mycomponent\src\mycomponent_idl.h"
#include "mycomponent\src\mycomponent_idl_i.c"

int main() {
    // Initialize argument variables
    VARIANT x, y, out1;
    //Initialize the COM library
    HRESULT hr = CoInitialize(NULL);
    //Create an instance of the COM object you created
    Imycomponentclass *pImycomponentclass;
    hr=CoCreateInstance
        (CLSID_mycomponentclass, NULL, CLSCTX_INPROC_SERVER, IID_Imycomponentclass,
        (void **)&pImycomponentclass);
    // Set the input arguments to the COM method
    x.vt=VT_R8;
    y.vt=VT_R8;
    x.dblVal=7.3;
    y.dblVal=1946.0;
    // Access the method with arguments and receive the output out1
    hr=(pImycomponentclass -> adddoubles(1,&out1,x,y));
    // Print the output
    cout << "The input values were " << x.dblVal << " and "
```

```
        << y.dblVal << ".\n";  
        cout << "The output of feeding the inputs into the addoubles method is "  
        << out1.dblVal << ".\n";  
    // Uninitialize COM  
        CoUninitialize();  
        return 0;  
    }
```

**2** In the MATLAB Command Window, compile the program as follows:

```
mbuild matlab_com_example.cpp
```

When you run the executable, the program displays two numbers and their sum, as returned by the COM object's `addoubles`.

## Using a COM Component in a .NET Application

### In this section...

“Overview” on page 13-14

“C# Implementation” on page 13-14

“Microsoft® Visual Basic Implementation” on page 13-17

### Overview

The following examples demonstrate the optimal fitting of a nonlinear function to a set of data in both C# and Microsoft Visual Basic implementations.

Note in particular how memory is freed and allocated. Use these examples as models when using COM components in your own .NET applications.

### C# Implementation

```
// *****
//
// CurveFitApp.cs
//
// This file is an example for using MATLAB COM component inside .NET application.
//
// Copyright 2001-2006 The MathWorks, Inc.
//
// *****

using System;
using CurveFitDemoComp;

namespace MathWorks.Demo.CurveFitApp
{
    /// args[0] - a positive integer representing number of
    /// data points.
    /// class CurveFitApp
    {
```



```
///          /// The main entry point for the application.
///          [STAThread]
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    CurveFitClass curveFitting = null;
    try
    {
        // Get user specified command line arguments or
        // set default
        int numberOfDataPts= (0 != args.Length)
            ? System.Int32.Parse(args[0]) : 4;

        // Input that will be passed to the COM method
        double[] xData = new double[numberOfDataPts];
        double[] yData = new double[numberOfDataPts];
        for(int i=1; i<= numberOfDataPts; i++)
        {
            xData[i-1] = i;
            yData[i-1] = i;
        }

        // Objects that will be returned by the COM method
        object coefficients = new object();
        object lambda = new object();

        // Create the curve fit object
        curveFitting = new CurveFitClass();
        if(curveFitting != null)
        {
            curveFitting.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.TransposeOutput =
                true;

            // Call the COM method
            curveFitting.fitdemo(2, ref coefficients,
                ref lambda, xData, yData);

            // Display values of co-efficients returned by COM method
            Console.WriteLine("\nCo-efficient:\n");

            // Convert the coefficients array to a two
```

```
// dimensional native double array
if(coefficients.GetType().IsArray)
{
    System.Array coeffArray =
    (System.Array)coefficients;
    // Display the array elements:
    for (int i= coeffArray.GetLowerBound(0);
        i <= (int)coeffArray.GetUpperBound(0); i++)
        for (int j= coeffArray.GetLowerBound(1);
            j <= (int)coeffArray.GetUpperBound(1); j++)
            Console.WriteLine("Result({0},{1})= {2}", i, j,
                coeffArray.GetValue(i,j));
}

// Display values of lambda returned by COM method
Console.WriteLine("\nLambda:\n");

// Convert the lambda array to a two dimensional
// native double array
if(lambda.GetType().IsArray)
{
    System.Array lambdaArray = (System.Array)lambda;
    // Display the array elements:
    for (int i= lambdaArray.GetLowerBound(0);
        i <= (int)lambdaArray.GetUpperBound(0); i++)
        for (int j= lambdaArray.GetLowerBound(1);
            j <= (int)lambdaArray.GetUpperBound(1); j++)
            Console.WriteLine("Result({0},{1})= {2}", i, j,
                lambdaArray.GetValue(i,j));
}

}

Console.ReadLine(); // Wait for user to exit application

}
catch(System.Runtime.InteropServices.COMException exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine("COM Error: {0}", exception);
}
catch(Exception exception)
```



```
' The main entry point for the application.
' </summary>
Shared Sub Main(ByVal args() As String)
Dim curveFitting As CurveFitClass = Nothing

Try
    ' Get user specified command line arguments or set default
Dim numberOfDataPts As Integer
If (0 <> args.Length) Then
    numberOfDataPts = System.Int32.Parse(args(0))
Else
    numberOfDataPts = 4
End If

    ' Input that will be passed to the COM method
Dim xData() As Double = New Double(numberOfDataPts - 1) {}
Dim yData() As Double = New Double(numberOfDataPts - 1) {}

For i As Integer = 1 To numberOfDataPts
    xData(i - 1) = i
    yData(i - 1) = i
Next i

    ' Objects that will be returned by the COM method
Dim coefficients As Object = New Object
Dim lambda As Object = New Object

    ' Create the curve fit object
curveFitting = New CurveFitClass
If Not (curveFitting Is Nothing) Then

        curveFitting.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.TransposeOutput = True

    ' Call the COM method
curveFitting.fitdemo(2, coefficients, lambda, xData, yData)

    ' Display values of co-efficients returned by COM method
Console.WriteLine("{0}Co-efficient:{1}", Chr(10), Chr(10))

    ' Convert the coefficients array to a two dimensional
```

```

' native double array
If (coefficients.GetType().IsArray) Then

    Dim coeffArray As System.Array = CType(coefficients,
                                           System.Array)

    ' Display the array elements:
    For i As Integer = coeffArray.GetLowerBound(0)
        To coeffArray.GetUpperBound(0)
            For j As Integer = coeffArray.GetLowerBound(1)
                To coeffArray.GetUpperBound(1)
                    Console.WriteLine("Result({0},{1})= {2}", i, j,
                                     coeffArray.GetValue(i, j))
                Next j
            Next i
        End If

    ' Display values of lambda returned by COM method
    Console.WriteLine("{0}Lambda:{1}", Chr(10), Chr(10))

    ' Convert the lambda array to a two dimensional native
    ' double array
    If (lambda.GetType().IsArray) Then
        Dim lambdaArray As System.Array = CType(lambda,
                                                System.Array)

        ' Display the array elements:
        For i As Integer = lambdaArray.GetLowerBound(0)
            To lambdaArray.GetUpperBound(0)
                For j As Integer = lambdaArray.GetLowerBound(1)
                    ) To lambdaArray.GetUpperBound(1)
                        Console.WriteLine("Result({0},{1})= {2}", i, j,
                                         lambdaArray.GetValue(i, j))
                    Next j
                Next i
            End If

        End If
    End If

    Console.ReadLine() ' Wait for user to exit application

```

```
        Catch exception As System.Runtime.InteropServices.COMException
            Console.WriteLine("COM Error: {0}", exception)

        Catch exception As Exception
            Console.WriteLine("Error: {0}", exception)

    Finally
        ' Free COM object
        If Not (curveFitting Is Nothing) Then
            System.Runtime.InteropServices.Marshal.ReleaseComObject(curveFitting)
        End If
    End Try

End Sub

#End Region
End Class
End Namespace
```

## Adding Events to COM Objects

In this section...
“MATLAB Language Pragma” on page 13-21
“Using a Callback with a Microsoft® Visual Basic Event” on page 13-22

### MATLAB Language Pragma

The MATLAB Builder NE product supports events, or callbacks, through a MATLAB language pragma. A *pragma* is a directive to the builder, beyond what is conveyed in the MATLAB language itself. The pragma for adding events is `#event`.

The MATLAB product interprets the `%#event` statement as a comment. But when the builder encapsulates a function, the `#event` pragma tells the builder that the function requires an *outgoing interface* and an *event handler*.

---

**Note** The `#event` pragma is supported only for COM components built with MATLAB Builder NE. You can not use this feature with .NET components created by MATLAB Builder NE or COM components built with the MATLAB Builder EX product.

---

To use the `#event` pragma:

- 1 Write the code for a MATLAB function stub that serves as the prototype for the event. This function stub is the *event function*.
- 2 Build the COM component as usual. Make sure that you specify the event function you wrote in the MATLAB product as a method in the component class.
- 3 In your application, add the code to implement the event handler (the event handler belongs to the COM object created by the builder). The code for the event handler should implement the event function, or function stub, that you wrote in MATLAB.

When an encapsulated MATLAB function (now a method in a COM object in your application) calls the event function, the call is dispatched to the event handler in the application.

Some examples of how you might use callbacks in your code are

- To give the application periodic feedback during a long-running calculation by an encapsulated MATLAB function. For example, if you have a task that requires  $n$  iterations, you might signal an event to increment a progress bar in the user interface on each iteration.
- To signal a warning during a calculation but continue execution of the task.
- To return intermediate results of a calculation to the user and continue execution of the task.

## Using a Callback with a Microsoft Visual Basic Event

The example in this topic shows how to use a callback in conjunction with a Microsoft Visual Basic `ProgressBar` control.

The MATLAB function `iterate` runs through  $n$  iterations and fires an event every `inc` iterations. When the function finishes, it returns a single output. To simulate actually doing something, the sample code includes a `pause` statement in the main loop so that the function waits for 1 second in each iteration.

The sample includes MATLAB functions `iterate.m` and `progress.m`.

### **iterate.m**

```
function [x] = iterate(n,inc)
    %initialize x
    x = 0;
    % Run n iterations, callback every inc time
    k = 0;
    for i=1:n
        k = k + 1;
        if k == inc
            progress(i);
            k = 0;
        end;
    end;
```



```

        % Do some work on x...
        x = x + 1;
        % Pause for 1 second to simulate doing
        % something
        pause(1);
    end;

```

### **prograss.m**

```

function progress(i)
    %#event
    i

```

The `iterate` function runs through `n` iterations and calls the `progress` function every `inc` iterations, passing the current iteration number as an argument. When this function is executed in MATLAB, the value of `i` appears each time the `progress` function gets called.

Suppose you create a the builder component that has these two functions included as class methods. For this example the component has a single class named `myclass`. The resulting COM class has a method `iterate` and an event `progress`.

To receive the event calls, implement a “listener” in the application. The Visual Basic syntax for the event handler for this example is

```

Sub aClass_progress(ByVal i As Variant)

```

where `aClass` is the variable name used for your class instance. The `ByVal` qualifier is used on all input parameters of an event function. To enable the listening process, dimension the `aClass` variable with the `WithEvents` keyword.

This example uses a simple Visual Basic form with three `TextBox` controls, one `CommandButton` control, and one `ProgressBar` control. The first text box, `Text1`, inputs the number of iterations, stored in the form variable `N`. The second text box, `Text2`, inputs the callback increment, stored in the variable `Inc`. The third text box, `Text3`, displays the output of the function when it finishes executing. The command button, `Command1`, executes the `iterate`

method on your class when pressed. The progress bar control, `ProgressBar1`, updates itself in response to the progress event.

```
'Form Variables
Private WithEvents aClass As myclass      'Class instance
Private N As Long                        'Number of iterations
Private Inc As Long                      'Callback increment
Private Sub Form_Load()
'When form is loaded, create new myclass instance
    Set aClass = New myclass
    'Initialize variables
    N = 2
    Inc = 1
End Sub
Private Sub Text1_Change()
'Update value of N from Text1 text whenever it changes
    On Error Resume Next
    N = CLng(Text1.Text)
    If Err <> 0 Then N = 2
    If N < 2 Then N = 2
End Sub
Private Sub Text2_Change()
'Update value of Inc from Text2 text whenever it changes
    On Error Resume Next
    Inc = CLng(Text2.Text)
    If Err <> 0 Then Inc = 1
    If Inc <= 0 Then Inc = 1
End Sub
Private Sub Command1_Click()
'Execute function whenever Execute button is clicked
    Dim x As Variant
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    'Initialize ProgressBar
    ProgressBar1.Min = 1
    ProgressBar1.Max = N
    Text3.Text = ""
    'Iterate N times and call back at Inc intervals
    Call aClass.iterate(1, x, CDb1(N), CDb1(Inc))
    Text3.Text = Format(x)
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
```

```
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub
Private Sub aClass_progress(ByVal i As Variant)
'Event handler. Called each time the iterate function
'calls the progress function. Progress bar is updated
'with the value passed in, causing the control to advance.
    ProgressBar1.Value = i
End Sub
```

## Passing Arguments

### In this section...

“Overview” on page 13-26

“Creating and Using a varargin Array in Microsoft® Visual Basic Programs” on page 13-26

“Creating and Using varargout in Microsoft® Visual Basic Programs” on page 13-27

“Passing an Empty varargin From Microsoft® Visual Basic Code” on page 13-28

### Overview

When it encapsulates MATLAB functions, the MATLAB Builder NE product adds the MATLAB function arguments to the argument list of the class methods it creates. Thus, if a MATLAB function uses `varargin` and/or `varargout`, the builder adds these arguments to the argument list of the class method. They are added at the end of the argument list for input and output arguments.

You can pass multiple arguments as a `varargin` array by creating a `Variant` array, assigning each element of the array to the respective input argument.

See “Producing a COM Class” on page 15-23 for more information about mapping of input and output arguments.

### Creating and Using a varargin Array in Microsoft Visual Basic Programs

The following example creates a `varargin` array to call a method encapsulating a MATLAB function of the form `y = foo(varargin)`.

The `MWUtil` class included in the `MWComUtil` utility library provides the `MWPack` helper function to create `varargin` parameters.

```
Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant, x3 As Variant, _  
            x4 As Variant, x5 As Variant) As Variant
```

```

Dim aClass As Object
Dim v(1 To 5) As Variant
Dim y As Variant

On Error Goto Handle_Error
v(1) = x1
v(2) = x2
v(3) = x3
v(4) = x4
v(5) = x5
aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
Call aClass.foo(1,y,v)
foo = y
Exit Function
Handle_Error:
foo = Err.Description
End Function

```

## Creating and Using varargout in Microsoft Visual Basic Programs

The next example processes a varargout argument as three separate arguments. This function uses the MWUnpack function in the utility library.

The MATLAB function used is `varargout = foo(x1,x2)`.

```

Sub foo(Xout1 As Variant, Xout2 As Variant, Xout3 As Variant, _
        Xin1 As Variant, Xin2 As Variant)
    Dim aClass As Object
    Dim aUtil As Object
    Dim v As Variant

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    aUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
    aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
    Call aClass.foo(3,v,Xin1,Xin2)
    Call aUtil.MWUnpack(v,0,True,Xout1,Xout2,Xout3)
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox(Err.Description)

```

End Sub

## Passing an Empty varargin From Microsoft Visual Basic Code

In MATLAB, varargin inputs to functions are optional, and may be present or omitted from the function call. However, from Microsoft Visual Basic, function signatures are more strict—if varargin is present among the MATLAB function inputs, the VBA call must include varargin, even if you want it to be empty. To pass in an empty varargin, pass the Null variant, which is converted to an empty MATLAB cell array when passed.

### Example: Passing an Empty varargin From VBA Code

The following example illustrates how to pass the null variant in order to pass an empty varargin:

```
Function foo(x1 As Variant, x2 As Variant, x3 As Variant, _  
            x4 As Variant, x5 As Variant) As Variant  
    Dim aClass As Object  
    Dim v(1 To 5) As Variant  
    Dim y As Variant  
  
    On Error Goto Handle_Error  
    v(1) = x1  
    v(2) = x2  
    v(3) = x3  
    v(4) = x4  
    v(5) = x5  
    aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")  
  
    'Call aClass.foo(1,y,v)  
    Call aClass.foo(1,y,Null)  
  
    foo = y  
    Exit Function  
Handle_Error:  
    foo = Err.Description  
End Function
```

# Using Flags to Control Array Formatting and Data Conversion

## In this section...

“Overview” on page 13-29

“Array Formatting Flags” on page 13-30

“Using Array Formatting Flags” on page 13-30

“Using Data Conversion Flags” on page 13-33

“Special Flags for Some Microsoft® Visual Basic Types” on page 13-35

## Overview

Generally, you should write your application code so that it matches the arguments (input and output) of the MATLAB functions that are encapsulated in the COM objects that you are using. The mapping of arguments from the MATLAB product to Microsoft Visual Basic is fully described in MATLAB® to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules on page 15-12 and COM VARIANT to MATLAB® Conversion Rules on page 15-17.

In some cases it is not possible to match the two kinds of arguments exactly; for example, when existing MATLAB code is used in conjunction with a third-party product such as Microsoft Excel. For these and other cases, the builder supports formatting and conversion flags that control how array data is formatted in both directions (input and output).

When it creates a component, the builder includes a component property named `MWFlags`. The `MWFlags` property is readable and writable.

The `MWFlags` property consists of two sets of constants: *array formatting flags* and *data conversion flags*. Array formatting flags affect the transformation of arrays, whereas data conversion flags deal with type conversions of individual array elements.

## Array Formatting Flags

The following tables provide a quick overview of how to use array formatting flags to specify conversions for input and output arguments.

Name of Flag	Possible Values of Flag	Results of Conversion
InputArrayFormat	mwArrayFormatMatrix (default)	MATLAB matrix from general Variant data.
	mwArrayFormatCell	MATLAB cell array from general Variant data.
	Array data from an Excel range is coded in Visual Basic as an array of Variant. Since MATLAB functions typically have matrix arguments, using the default setting makes sense when you are dealing with data from Excel.	
OutputArrayFormat	mwArrayFormatAsIs	Array of Variant
	Converts arrays according to the default conversion rules listed in MATLAB® to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules on page 15-12.	
	mwArrayFormatMatrix	A Variant containing an array of a basic type.
	mwArrayFormatCell	MATLAB cell array from general Variant data.
AutoSizeOutput	When this flag is set, the target range automatically resizes to fit the resulting array. If this flag is not set, the target range must be at least as large as the output array or the data is truncated. Use this flag for Excel Range objects passed directly as output parameters.	
TransposeOutput	Transposes all array output. Use this flag when dealing with an encapsulated MATLAB function whose output is a one-dimensional array. By default, the MATLAB product handles one-dimensional arrays as 1-by-n matrices (that is, as row vectors). Change this default with the TransposeOutput flag if you prefer column output.	

## Using Array Formatting Flags

To use the following example, make sure that you reference the MWComUtil library in the current project:



**1 Select Tools > References.**

**2 Click MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library.**

Consider the following Microsoft Visual Basic function definition for foo:

```
Sub foo( )
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass
    Dim var1(1 To 2, 1 To 2), var2 As Variant
    Dim x(1 To 2, 1 To 2) As Double
    Dim y1,y2 As Variant

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    var1(1,1) = 11#
    var1(1,2) = 12#
    var1(2,1) = 21#
    var1(2,2) = 22#
    x(1,1) = 11
    x(1,2) = 12
    x(2,1) = 21
    x(2,2) = 22
    var2 = x
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass
    Call aClass.foo(1,y1,var1)
    Call aClass.foo(1,y2,var2)
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub
```

The example has two Variant variables, var1 and var2. These two variables contain the same numerical data, but internally they are structured differently; one is a 2-by-2 array of variant and the other is a 1-by-1 array of variant. The variables are described in the following table.

Scenario	var1	var2
Numerical data	<pre> 11    12 21    22                     </pre>	<pre> 11    12 21    22                     </pre>
Internal structure in Visual Basic	2-by-2 array of Variant. Each variant is a 1-by-1 array of Double.	1-by-1 Variant, which contains a 2-by-2 array of Double
Result of conversion by the builder according to the default data conversion rules	2-by-2 cell array. Each element is a 1-by-1 array of double.	2-by-2 matrix. Each element is a Double.

The InputArrayFormat flag controls how the arrays are handled. In this example, the value for the InputArrayFormat flag is the default, which is mwArrayFormatMatrix. The default causes an array to be converted to a matrix. See the table for the result of the conversion of var2.

To specify a cell array (instead of a matrix) as input to the function call, set the InputArrayFormat flag to mwArrayFormatCell instead of the default. Do this in this example by adding the following line after creating the class and before the method call:

```
aClass .MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.InputArrayFormat =
    mwArrayFormatCell
```

Setting the flag to mwArrayFormatCell causes all array input to the encapsulated MATLAB function to be converted to cell arrays.

### Modifying Output Format

Similarly, you can manipulate the format of output arguments using the OutputArrayFormat flag. You can also modify array output with the AutoResizeOutput and TransposeOutput flags.

### Output Format in VBScript

When calling a COM object in VBScript you need to make sure that you set MWFlags for the COM object to specify cell array for the output. Also, you

must use an enumeration (the enumeration value for a cell array is 2) to make the specification (rather than specifying `mwArrayFormatCell`).

The following sample code shows how to accomplish this:

```
obj.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.OutputArrayFormat = 2
```

## Using Data Conversion Flags

Two data conversion flags, `CoerceNumericToType` and `InputDateFormat`, govern how numeric and date types are converted from Visual Basic to MATLAB.

To use the following example, make sure that you reference the `MWComUtil` library in the current project:

- 1 Select **Tools > References**.
- 2 Click **MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library**.

This example converts `var1` of type `Variant/Integer` to an `int16` and `var2` of type `Variant/Double` to a `double`.

```
Sub foo( )
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass
    Dim var1, var2 As Variant
    Dim y As Variant

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    var1 = 1
    var2 = 2#
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass
    Call aClass.foo(1,y,var1,var2)
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub
```

If the original MATLAB function expects doubles for both arguments, this code might cause an error. One solution is to assign a `double` to `var1`, but this may not be possible or desirable. As an alternative, you can set the

CoerceNumericToType flag to mwTypeDouble, causing the data converter to convert all numeric input to double. To do this, place the following line after creating the class and before calling the methods:

```
aClass .MWFlags.DataConversionFlags.CoerceNumericToType =  
mwTypeDouble
```

The next example shows how to use the InputDateFormat flag, which controls how the Visual Basic Date type is converted. The example sends the current date and time as an input argument and converts it to a string.

```
Sub foo( )  
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass  
    Dim today As Date  
    Dim y As Variant  
  
    On Error Goto Handle_Error  
    today = Now  
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass  
    aClass . MWFlags.DataConversionFlags.InputDateFormat =  
mwDateFormatString  
    Call aClass.foo(1,y,today)  
    Exit Sub  
Handle_Error:  
    MsgBox(Err.Description)  
End Sub
```

The next example uses an MWArg object to modify the conversion flags for one argument in a method call. In this case the first output argument (y1) is coerced to a Date, and the second output argument (y2) uses the current default conversion flags supplied by aClass.

```
Sub foo(y1 As Variant, y2 As Variant)  
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass  
    Dim ytemp As MWArg  
    Dim today As Date  
  
    On Error Goto Handle_Error  
    today = Now  
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass  
    Set ytemp = New MWArg
```

```
ytemp.MWFlags.DataConversionFlags.OutputAsDate = True
Call aClass.foo(2, ytemp, y2, today)
y1 = ytemp
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub
```

## Special Flags for Some Microsoft Visual Basic Types

In general, you use the `MWFlags` class property to change specified behaviors of the conversion from Microsoft Visual Basic Variant types to MATLAB types, and vice versa. There are some exceptions — some types generated by the builder have their own `MWFlags` property. When you use these particular types, the method call behaves according to the settings of the type and not of the class containing the method being called. The exceptions are for the following types generated by the builder:

- `MWStruct`
- `MWField`
- `MWComplex`
- `MWSparse`
- `MWArg`

---

**Note** The `MWArg` class is supplied specifically for the case when a particular argument needs different settings from the default class properties.

---

## Using MATLAB Global Variables in Microsoft Visual Basic

Class properties allow an object to retain an internal state between method calls.

*Global variables* are variables that are declared in the MATLAB product with the `global` keyword. The builder automatically converts all global variables shared by the MATLAB files that make up a class to properties on that class.

Properties are particularly useful when you have a large array containing values that do not change often, but you need to operate on it frequently. In this case, you can set the array once as a class property and operate on it repeatedly without incurring the overhead of passing (and converting) the data for passing to each method every time it is called.

The following example shows how to use a class property in a matrix factorization class. The example develops a class that performs Cholesky, LU, and QR factorizations on the same matrix. It stores the input matrix (coded as `A` in MATLAB) as a class property so that it does not need to be passed to the factorization routines.

Consider these three MATLAB files.

Cholesky.m

```
function [L] = Cholesky()
    global A;
    if (isempty(A))
        L = [];
        return;
    end
    L = chol(A);
```

LUDecomp.m

```
function [L,U] = LUDecomp()
    global A;
    if (isempty(A))
        L = [];
        U = [];
```

```

        return;
    end
    [L,U] = lu(A);

```

QRDecomp.m

```

function [Q,R] = QRDecomp()
    global A;
    if (isempty(A))
        Q = [];
        R = [];
        return;
    end
    [Q,R] = qr(A);

```

These three files share a common global variable A. Each function performs a matrix factorization on A and returns the results.

To build the class:

- 1** Create a new MATLAB Builder NE project named `mymatrix` with a version of 1.0.
- 2** Add a single class called `myfactor` to the component.
- 3** Add the above three MATLAB files to the class.
- 4** Build the component.

To test your application, make sure that you reference the library generated by the builder in the current Visual Basic project:

- 1** Select **Project > References** in the Visual Basic main menu.
- 2** Click **mymatrix 1.0 Type Library**.

Use the following Visual Basic subroutine to test the `myfactor` class:

```

Sub TestFactor()
    Dim x(1 To 2, 1 To 2) As Double
    Dim C As Variant, L As Variant, U As Variant, _

```

```
Q As Variant, R As Variant
Dim factor As myfactor

On Error GoTo Handle_Error
Set factor = New myfactor
x(1, 1) = 2#
x(1, 2) = -1#
x(2, 1) = -1#
x(2, 2) = 2#
factor.A = x
Call factor.cholesky(1, C)
Call factor.ludecomp(2, L, U)
Call factor.qrdecomp(2, Q, R)
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub
```

Run the subroutine, which does the following:

- 1** Creates an instance of the myfactor class
- 2** Assigns a double matrix to the property A
- 3** Calls the three factorization methods



## Blocking Execution of a Console Application that Creates Figures

In this section...
“MCRWaitForFigures” on page 13-39
“Using MCRWaitForFigures to Block Execution” on page 13-40

### MCRWaitForFigures

The MATLAB Builder NE product adds a `MCRWaitForFigures` method to each class in the COM components that it creates. `MCRWaitForFigures` takes no arguments. Your application can call `MCRWaitForFigures` any time during execution.

The purpose of `MCRWaitForFigures` is to block execution of a calling program as long as figures created in encapsulated MATLAB code are displayed. Typically you use `MCRWaitForFigures` when:

- There are one or more figures open that were created by an instance of a COM object created by the builder.
- The method that displays the graphics requires user input before continuing.
- The method that calls the figures was called from `main()` in a console program.

When `MCRWaitForFigures` is called, execution of the calling program is blocked if any figures created by the calling object remain open.

---

**Caution** Be careful when calling the `MCRWaitForFigures` method. Calling this method from a Microsoft Visual Basic UI or from an interactive program such as Microsoft Excel can hang the application. This method should be called *only* from console-based programs.

---

## Using MCRWaitForFigures to Block Execution

The following example illustrates using `MCRWaitForFigures` from a Microsoft Visual C++ console application. The example uses a COM object created by the builder; the object encapsulates MATLAB code that draws a simple plot.

- 1 Create a work folder for your source code. In this example, the folder is `D:\work\plotdemo`.
- 2 Create the following MATLAB file in this folder:

```
drawplot.m

function drawplot()
    plot(1:10);
```

- 3 Use the builder to create a COM component with the following properties:

Component name	plotdemo
Class name	plotdemoclass
Version	1.0

**Note** Instead of using the Deployment Tool, you can create the component by issuing the following command at the MATLAB prompt:

```
mcc -d 'D:\work\plotdemo\src' -v -B
    'ccom:plotdemo,plotdemoclass,1.0' 'D:\Work\plotdemo\drawplot.m'
```

- 4 Create a Visual C++ program in a file named `runplot.cpp` with the following code:

```
// Include the following files generated by
// MATLAB Builder NE:
#include "src\plotdemo_idl.h"
#include "src\plotdemo_idl_i.c"

int main()
```

```
{
    // Initialize the COM library
    HRESULT hr = CoInitialize(NULL);
    // Create an instance of the COM object you created
    Iplotdemoclass* pIplotdemoclass = NULL;
    hr = CoCreateInstance(CLSID_plotdemoclass, NULL,
        CLSCTX_INPROC_SERVER, IID_Iplotdemoclass,
        (void **)&pIplotdemoclass);
    // Call the drawplot method
    hr = pIplotdemoclass->drawplot();
    // Block execution until user dismisses the figure window
    hr = pIplotdemoclass->MCRWaitForFigures();
    // Uninitialize COM
    CoUninitialize();
    return 0;
}
```

- 5** In the MATLAB Command Window, build the application as follows:

```
mbuild runplot.cpp
```

When you run the application, the program displays a plot from 1 to 10 in a MATLAB figure window. The application ends when you dismiss the figure.

---

**Note** To see what happens without the call to `MCRWaitForFigures`, comment out the call, rebuild the application, and run it. In this case, the figure is drawn and is immediately destroyed as the application exits.

---

## Obtaining Registry Information

When programming with COM components, you might need details about a component. You can use `componentinfo`, which is a MATLAB function, to query the system registry for details about any installed MATLAB Builder NE component.

This example queries the registry for a component named `mycomponent` and a version of 1.0. This component has four methods: `mysum`, `randvectors`, `getdates`, and `myprimes`; two properties: `m` and `n`; and one event: `myevent`.

```
Info = componentinfo('mycomponent', 1, 0)

Info =

    Name: 'mycomponent'
  TypeLib: 'mycomponent 1.0 Type Library'
    LIBID: '{3A14AB34-44BE-11D5-B155-00D0B7BA7544}'
  MajorRev: 1
  MinorRev: 0
  FileName: 'D:\Work\ mycomponent\distrib\mycomponent_1_0.dll'
  Interfaces: [1x1 struct]
  CoClasses: [1x1 struct]

Info.Interfaces

ans =

    Name: 'Imyclass'
    IID: '{3A14AB36-44BE-11D5-B155-00D0B7BA7544}'

Info.CoClasses

ans =

    Name: 'myclass'
  CLSID: '{3A14AB35-44BE-11D5-B155-00D0B7BA7544}'
  ProgID: 'mycomponent.myclass.1_0'
  VerIndProgID: 'mycomponent.myclass'
  InprocServer32: 'D:\Work\mycomponent\distrib\mycomponent_1_0.dll'
```

```
        Methods: [1x4 struct]
        Properties: {'m', 'n'}
        Events: [1x1 struct]

Info.CoClasses.Events.M

ans =

function myevent(x, y)

Info.CoClasses.Methods

ans =

1x4 struct array with fields:
    IDL
    M
    C
    VB

Info.CoClasses.Methods.M

ans =

function [y] = mysum(varargin)

ans =

function [varargout] = randvectors()

ans =

function [x] = getdates(n, inc)

ans =

function [p] = myprimes(n)
```

The returned structure contains fields corresponding to the most important information from the registry and type library for the component.

## Handling Errors During a Method Call

If your application generates an error while creating a class instance or during a class method call, the current procedure creates an exception.

Microsoft Visual Basic provides an exception handling capability through the `On Error Goto <label>` statement, in which the program execution jumps to `<label>` when an error occurs. (`<label>` must be located in the same procedure as the `On Error Goto` statement.) All errors in Visual Basic are handled this way, including errors within the MATLAB code that you have encapsulated into a COM object. An exception creates a Visual Basic `ErrObject` object in the current context in a variable called `Err`.

See the Microsoft Visual Basic documentation for a detailed discussion on Visual Basic error handling.

# Using COM Components in Microsoft Visual Basic Applications

---

- “Magic Square Example” on page 14-2
- “Creating an Excel Add-In: Spectral Analysis Example” on page 14-9
- “Univariate Interpolation Example” on page 14-24
- “Matrix Calculator Example” on page 14-32
- “Curve Fitting Example” on page 14-43
- “Bouncing Ball Simulation Example” on page 14-51

## Magic Square Example

In this section...
“Example Overview” on page 14-2
“Creating the MATLAB File” on page 14-2
“Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Project” on page 14-3
“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Project” on page 14-4
“Creating the User Interface” on page 14-4
“Creating the Executable in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 14-7
“Testing the Application” on page 14-7
“Packaging the Component” on page 14-8

### Example Overview

This example uses a simple MATLAB file that takes a single input and creates a magic square of that size. It then builds a COM component using this MATLAB file as a class method. Finally, the example shows the integration of this component into a standalone Microsoft Visual Basic application. The application accepts the magic square size as input and displays the matrix in a ListView control box.

---

**Note** ListView is a Windows Form control that displays a list of items with icons. You can use a list view to create a user interface like the right pane of Windows Explorer. See the MSDN Library for more information about Windows Form controls.

---

### Creating the MATLAB File

To get started, create the MATLAB file `mymagic.m` containing the following code:

```
function y = mymagic(x)
y = magic(x);
```



## Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Project

- 1 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in the MATLAB product:

```
mbuild -setup
```


Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 2 Specify a COM component as follows:
  - a While in MATLAB, issue the following command to open Deployment Tool:

```
deploytool
```

- b Create a project with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Project name	magicdemo
Class name	magicdemoclass
Project folder	The name of your work folder followed by the component name. In this example, that is D:\Work\MagicSquareExample\magicdemo.
Generate Verbose Output	Selected

- c Locate your work folder and navigate to the MagicDemoComp folder, which contains the MATLAB file for the makesquare function. Add the makesquare.m file to the project.
- 3 Build the component by clicking the  button in the Deployment Tool toolbar.

The build process begins, and a log of the build appears in the **Output** pane of the Deployment Tool. The files that are needed for the component are

copied to two newly created folders, `src` and `distrib`, in the `magicdemo` folder. A copy of the build log is placed in the `src` folder.

## Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Project

---

**Note** This procedure assumes that you are using Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0.

---

- 1** Start Visual Basic.
- 2** In the New Project dialog box, select **Standard EXE** as the project type and click **Open**. This creates a new Visual Basic project with a blank form.
- 3** From the main menu, select **Project > References** to open the Project References dialog box.
- 4** Select **magicdemo 1.0 Type Library** from the list of available components and click **OK**.
- 5** Returning to the Visual Basic main menu, select **Project > Components** to open the Components dialog box.
- 6** Select **Microsoft Windows Common Controls 6.0** and click **OK**. You will use the `Listview` control from this component library.

## Creating the User Interface

After you create the project, add a series of controls to the blank form to create a form with the following settings.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Frame	Frame1	Caption = Magic Squares Demo	Groups controls
Label	Label1	Caption = Magic Square Size	Labels the magic square edit box.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
TextBox	edtSize		Accepts input of magic square size.
CommandButton	btnCreate	Caption = Create	When pressed, creates a new magic square with current size.
ListView	lstMagic	GridLines = True LabelEdit = lvwManual View = lvwReport	Displays the magic square.

When the form and controls are complete, add the following code to the form. This code references the control and variable names listed above. If you have given different names for any of the controls or any variable, change this code to reflect those differences.

```

Private Size As Double 'Holds current matrix size
Private theMagic As magicdemo.magicdemoclass 'magic object instance

Private Sub Form_Load()
'This function is called when the form is loaded.
'Creates a new magic class instance.
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Set theMagic = New magicdemo.magicdemoclass
    Size = 0
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

Private Sub btnCreate_Click()
'This function is called when the Create button is pressed.
'Calls the mymagic method, and displays the magic square.
    Dim y As Variant
    If Size <= 0 Or theMagic Is Nothing Then Exit Sub
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Call theMagic.mymagic(1, y, Size)
    Call ShowMatrix(y)

```

```
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

Private Sub edtSize_Change()
    'This function is called when ever the contents of the
    'Text box change. Sets the current value of Size.
    On Error Resume Next
    Size = CDBl(edtSize.Text)
    If Err <> 0 Then
        Size = 0
    End If
End Sub

Private Sub ShowMatrix(y As Variant)
    'This function populates the ListView with the contents of
    'y. y is assumed to contain a 2D array.
    Dim n As Long
    Dim i As Long
    Dim j As Long
    Dim nLen As Long
    Dim Item As ListItem

    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    'Get array size
    If IsArray(y) Then
        n = UBound(y, 1)
    Else
        n = 1
    End If
    'Set up Column headers
    nLen = lstMagic.Width / 5
    Call lstMagic.ListItems.Clear
    Call lstMagic.ColumnHeaders.Clear
    Call lstMagic.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "", nLen, lvwColumnLeft)
    For i = 1 To n
        Call lstMagic.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , _
            "Column " & Format(i), nLen, lvwColumnLeft)
    Next
```

```
'Add array contents
If IsArray(y) Then
    For i = 1 To n
        Set Item = lstMagic.ListItems.Add(, , "Row " & Format(i))
        For j = 1 To n
            Call Item.ListSubItems.Add(, , Format(y(i, j)))
        Next
    Next
Else
    Set Item = lstMagic.ListItems.Add(, , "Row 1")
    Call Item.ListSubItems.Add(, , Format(y))
End If
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub
```

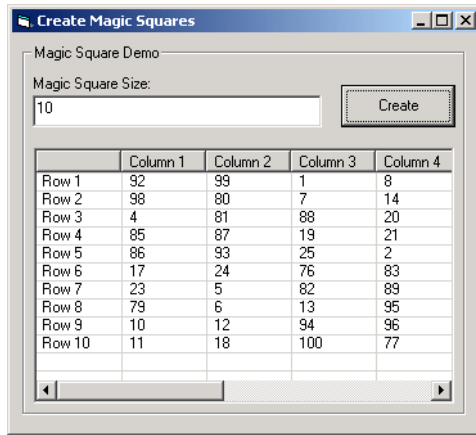
## Creating the Executable in Microsoft Visual Basic

After the code is complete, create the standalone executable `magic.exe`:

- 1** Reopen the project by selecting **File > Save Project** from the main menu. Accept the default name for the main form and enter `magic.vbp` for the project name.
- 2** Return to the **File** menu. Select **File > Make magic.exe** to create the finished product.

## Testing the Application

You can run the `magic.exe` executable as you would any other program. When the main dialog box opens, enter a positive number in the input box and click **Create**. A magic square of the input size appears as shown:




The ListView control automatically implements scrolling if the magic square is larger than 4-by-4.

## Packaging the Component

As a final step, package the `magicdemo` component and all supporting libraries into a self-extracting executable. Then anyone can install the package on another computer, in particular a computer without MATLAB installed, and use the `magicdemo` application.

To package the component:

- 1 Return to the Deployment Tool window and open the `magicdemo` project. If necessary, type `deploytool` in the Command Window.
- 2 Click the  button in the toolbar.

The Deployment Tool creates the `magicdemo_pkg.exe` self-extracting executable.

To install the component onto another computer, copy the `magicdemo_pkg.exe` package to that machine, run `magicdemo_pkg.exe` from a command prompt, and follow the instructions.

# Creating an Excel Add-In: Spectral Analysis Example

## In this section...

“Example Overview” on page 14-9

“Building the Component” on page 14-9

“Integrating the Component with VBA” on page 14-11

“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form” on page 14-13

“Adding the Spectral Analysis Menu Item to Microsoft® Excel” on page 14-18

“Saving the Add-In” on page 14-19

“Testing the Add-in” on page 14-20

“Packaging and Distributing the Add-In” on page 14-22

## Example Overview

This example shows how to create a comprehensive Microsoft Excel add-in to perform spectral analysis. It requires knowledge of Microsoft Visual Basic forms and controls, as well as Excel workbook events. See the Visual Basic documentation included with Excel for a complete discussion of these topics.

The example creates an Excel add-in that performs a fast Fourier transform (FFT) on an input data set located in a designated worksheet range. The function returns the FFT results, an array of frequency points, and the power spectral density of the input data. It places these results into ranges you indicate in the current worksheet. You can also optionally plot the power spectral density.

You develop the function so that you can invoke it from the Excel **Tools** menu and can select input and output ranges through a graphical user interface (GUI).

## Building the Component

Your component will have one class with the following two methods:

- The `computefft` method computes the FFT and power spectral density of the input data and computes a vector of frequency points based on the length of the data entered and the sampling interval.
- The `plotfft` method performs the same operations as `computefft`, but also plots the input data and the power spectral density in a MATLAB figure window.

The MATLAB code for these two methods resides in two MATLAB files, `computefft.m` and `plotfft.m`, as shown:

```
computefft.m:
function [fftdata, freq, powerspect] = computefft(data, interval)
    if (isempty(data))
        fftdata = [];
        freq = [];
        powerspect = [];
        return;
    end
    if (interval <= 0)
        error('Sampling interval must be greater than zero');
        return;
    end
    fftdata = fft(data);
    freq = (0:length(fftdata)-1)/(length(fftdata)*interval);
    powerspect = abs(fftdata)/(sqrt(length(fftdata)));
```

`plotfft.m:`

```
function [fftdata, freq, powerspect] = plotfft(data, interval)
    [fftdata, freq, powerspect] = computefft(data, interval);
    len = length(fftdata);
    if (len <= 0)
        return;
    end
    t = 0:interval:(len-1)*interval;
    subplot(2,1,1), plot(t, data)
    xlabel('Time'), grid on
    title('Time domain signal')
    subplot(2,1,2), plot(freq(1:len/2), powerspect(1:len/2))
```




```
xlabel('Frequency (Hz)'), grid on  
title('Power spectral density')
```

To build the component:

- 1 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in the MATLAB product:

```
mbuild -setup
```

Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 2 Start deploytool.
- 3 Create a new project with these settings:
  - **Project name:** Fourier
  - **Class name:** Fourier
- 4 Add the computefft.m and plotfft.m MATLAB files to the project.
- 5 Save the project.
- 6 Click the  button in the toolbar to create the component.

## Integrating the Component with VBA

The next task is to implement the necessary VBA code to integrate the component into Excel.

To open Excel and select the libraries you need to develop the add-in:

- 1 Start Excel.
- 2 From the Excel main menu, select **Tools > Macro > Visual Basic Editor** to open the Visual Basic Editor.
- 3 Select **Tools > References** to open the Project References dialog box.
- 4 Select **Fourier 1.0 Type Library** and **MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library**.

## Creating the Main VBA Code Module

The add-in requires some initialization code and some global variables to hold the application's state between function invocations. To achieve this, implement a Visual Basic code module to manage these tasks, as follows:

- 1** Right-click **VBAProject** in the Project window and select **Insert > Module**.

A new module appears under **Modules** in the **VBA Project**.

- 2** In the module's property page, set the **Name** property to **FourierMain**.

- 3** Enter the following code in the **FourierMain** module:

```
' FourierMain - Main module stores global state of controls
' and provides initialization code
'
'Global instance of Fourier object
Public theFourier As Fourier.Fourier
'Global instance of MWComplex to accept FFT
Public theFFTData As MWComplex
'Input data range
Public InputData As Range
'Sampling interval
Public Interval As Double
'Output frequency data range
Public Frequency As Range
'Output power spectral density range
Public PowerSpect As Range
'Holds the state of plot flag
Public bPlot As Boolean
'Global instance of MWUtil object
Public theUtil as MWUtil
'Module-is-initialized flag
Public bInitialized As Boolean
Private Sub LoadFourier()
'Initializes globals and Loads the Spectral Analysis form
    Dim MainForm As frmFourier
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Call InitApp
    Set MainForm = New frmFourier
```

```

        Call MainForm.Show
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

Private Sub InitApp()
'Initializes classes and libraries. Executes once
'for a given session of Excel
    If bInitialized Then Exit Sub
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    If theFourier Is Nothing Then
        Set theFourier = New Fourier.Fourier
    End If
    If theFFTDData Is Nothing Then
        Set theFFTDData = New MWComplex
    End If
    bInitialized = True
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

```

## Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Form

The next task is to develop a user interface for your add-in using the Microsoft Visual Basic editor. Follow these steps to create a new user form and populate it with the necessary controls:

- 1 Right-click **VBAProject** in the Project window and select **Insert > UserForm**.

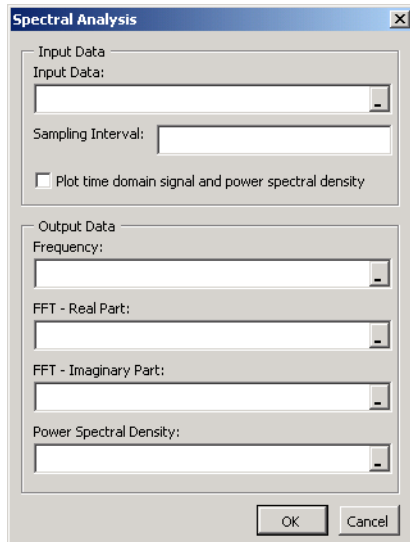
A new form appears under **Forms** in the **VBA Project**.

- 2 In the form's property page, set the **Name** property to frmFourier and the **Caption** property to Spectral Analysis.
- 3 Add a series of controls to the blank form to complete the dialog box, as summarized in the following table:

<b>Control Type</b>	<b>Control Name</b>	<b>Properties</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
Frame	Frame1	Caption = Input Data	Groups all input controls.
Label	Label1	Caption = Input Data:	Labels RefEdit for input data.
RefEdit	refedtInput		Selects range for input data.
Label	Label2	Caption = Sampling Interval	Labels text box for sampling interval.
TextBox	edtSample		Specifies the sampling interval.
CheckBox	chkPlot	Caption = Plot time domain Signal and Power Spectral Density	Plots input data and power spectral density.
Frame	Frame2	Caption = Output Data	Groups all output controls.
Label	Label3	Caption = Frequency:	Labels RefEdit for frequency output.
RefEdit	refedtFreq		Selects output range for frequency points.
Label	Label4	Caption = FFT - Real Part:	Labels RefEdit for real part of FFT.
RefEdit	refedtReal		Selects output range for real part of FFT of input data.
Label	Label5	Caption = FFT - Imaginary Part:	Labels RefEdit for imaginary part of FFT.
RefEdit	refedtImag		Selects output range for imaginary part of FFT of input data.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Label	Label16	Caption = Power Spectral Density	Labels RefEdit for power spectral density.
RefEdit	refedtPowSpect		Selects the output range for power spectral density of input data.
CommandButton	btnOK	Caption = OK Default = True	Executes the function and closes the dialog box.
CommandButton	btnCancel	Caption = Cancel Cancel = True	Closes the dialog box without executing the function.

The following figure shows the resulting layout.



- 4 When the form and controls are complete, right-click anywhere in the form and **View Code**. The following code listing shows the code to implement. Note that this code references the control and variable names listed in

the previous table. If you have renamed any of the controls or any global variable, change this code to reflect those differences.

```
,
'frmFourier Event handlers
,
Private Sub UserForm_Activate()
'UserForm Activate event handler. This function gets called before
'showing the form, and initializes all controls with values stored
'in global variables.
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    If theFourier Is Nothing Or theFFTData Is Nothing Then Exit Sub
    'Initialize controls with current state
    If Not InputData Is Nothing Then
        refedtInput.Text = InputData.Address
    End If
    edtSample.Text = Format(Interval)
    If Not Frequency Is Nothing Then
        refedtFreq.Text = Frequency.Address
    End If
    If Not IsEmpty (theFFTData.Real) Then
    If IsObject(theFFTData.Real) And TypeOf theFFTData.Real Is Range Then
        refedtReal.Text = theFFTData.Real.Address
    End If
    End If
    If Not IsEmpty (theFFTData.Imag) Then
    If IsObject(theFFTData.Imag) And TypeOf theFFTData.Imag Is Range Then
        refedtImag.Text = theFFTData.Imag.Address
    End If
    End If
    If Not PowerSpect Is Nothing Then
        refedtPowSpect.Text = PowerSpect.Address
    End If
    chkPlot.Value = bPlot
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

Private Sub btnCancel_Click()
```

```
'Cancel button click event handler. Exits form without computing fft
'or updating variables.
    Unload Me
End Sub
Private Sub btnOK_Click()
'OK button click event handler. Updates state of all variables from controls
'and executes the computefft or plotfft method.
    Dim R As Range

    If theFourier Is Nothing Or theFFTData Is Nothing Then GoTo Exit_Form
    On Error Resume Next
    'Process inputs
    Set R = Range(refedtInput.Text)
    If Err <> 0 Then
        MsgBox ("Invalid range entered for Input Data")
        Exit Sub
    End If
    Set InputData = R
    Interval = CDBl(edtSample.Text)
    If Err <> 0 Or Interval <= 0 Then
        MsgBox ("Sampling interval must be greater than zero")
        Exit Sub
    End If
    'Process Outputs
    Set R = Range(refedtFreq.Text)
    If Err = 0 Then
        Set Frequency = R
    End If
    Set R = Range(refedtReal.Text)
    If Err = 0 Then
        theFFTData.Real = R
    End If
    Set R = Range(refedtImag.Text)
    If Err = 0 Then
        theFFTData.Imag = R
    End If
    Set R = Range(refedtPowSpect.Text)
    If Err = 0 Then
        Set PowerSpect = R
    End If
```

```
bPlot = chkPlot.Value
'Compute the fft and optionally plot power spectral density
If bPlot Then
    Call theFourier.plotfft(3, theFFTData, Frequency, PowerSpect,_
InputData, Interval)
Else
    Call theFourier.computefft(3, theFFTData, Frequency, PowerSpect,_
InputData, Interval)
End If
GoTo Exit_Form
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
Exit_Form:
    Unload Me
End Sub
```

### Adding the Spectral Analysis Menu Item to Microsoft Excel

The last task in the integration process is to add a menu item to Microsoft Excel so that you can invoke the tool from the Excel **Tools** menu. To do this you add event handlers for the workbook's `AddinInstall` and `AddinUninstall` events; these are events that install and uninstall menu items. The menu item calls the `LoadFourier` function in the `FourierMain` module.

To implement the menu item:

- 1 Right-click **ThisWorkbook** in the Visual Basic project window and select **View Code**.
- 2 Add the following code to the **ThisWorkbook** object:

```
Private Sub Workbook_AddinInstall()
'Called when Addin is installed
    Call AddFourierMenuItem
End Sub

Private Sub Workbook_AddinUninstall()
'Called when Addin is uninstalled
    Call RemoveFourierMenuItem
```



```

End Sub

Private Sub AddFourierMenuItem()
    Dim ToolsMenu As CommandBarPopup
    Dim NewMenuItem As CommandBarButton

    'Remove if already exists
    Call RemoveFourierMenuItem
    'Find Tools menu
    Set ToolsMenu = Application.CommandBars(1).FindControl(ID:=30007)
    If ToolsMenu Is Nothing Then Exit Sub
    'Add Spectral Analysis menu item
    Set NewMenuItem = ToolsMenu.Controls.Add(Type:=msoControlButton)
    NewMenuItem.Caption = "Spectral Analysis..."
    NewMenuItem.OnAction = "LoadFourier"
End Sub

Private Sub RemoveFourierMenuItem()
    Dim CmdBar As CommandBar
    Dim Ctrl As CommandBarButton
    On Error Resume Next
    'Find tools menu and remove Spectral Analysis menu item
    Set CmdBar = Application.CommandBars(1)
    Set Ctrl = CmdBar.FindControl(ID:=30007)
    Call Ctrl.Controls("Spectral Analysis...").Delete
End Sub

```

## Saving the Add-In

Name the add-in Spectral Analysis and follow these steps to save it:

- 1 From the Excel main menu, select **File > Properties**.

The Workbook Properties dialog box opens.

- 2 Click the **Summary** tab and enter Spectral Analysis as the workbook title.
- 3 Click **OK** to save the edits.
- 4 Select **File > Save As** from the Excel main menu.

- 5 Select **Microsoft Excel Add-In (\*.xla)** as the file type.
- 6 Enter `Fourier.xla` as the file name.
- 7 Click **Save** to save the add-in.

### Testing the Add-in

Before distributing the add-in, test it with a sample problem. Spectral analysis is commonly used to find the frequency components of a signal buried in a noisy time domain signal. In this example you will create a data representation of a signal containing two distinct components and add to it a random component. This data along with the output will be stored in columns of an Excel worksheet, and you will plot the time-domain signal along with the power spectral density.

To create the test problem:

- 1 Start a new Excel session with a blank workbook.
- 2 Select **Tools > Add-Ins** from the main menu.
- 3 When the Add-Ins dialog box opens, click **Browse**.
- 4 Browse to the `Fourier.xla` file and click **OK**. The **Spectral Analysis** add-in appears in the available **Add-Ins** list and is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to load the add-in.

This add-in installs a menu item under the Excel **Tools** menu. You can display the Spectral Analysis GUI by selecting **Tools > Spectral Analysis**.

Before invoking the add-in, create some data, in this case a signal with components at 15 and 40 Hz. Sample the signal for 10 seconds at a sampling rate of 0.01 second. Put the time points into column A and the signal points into column B.

### Creating the Data

- 1 Enter 0 for cell A1 in the current worksheet.

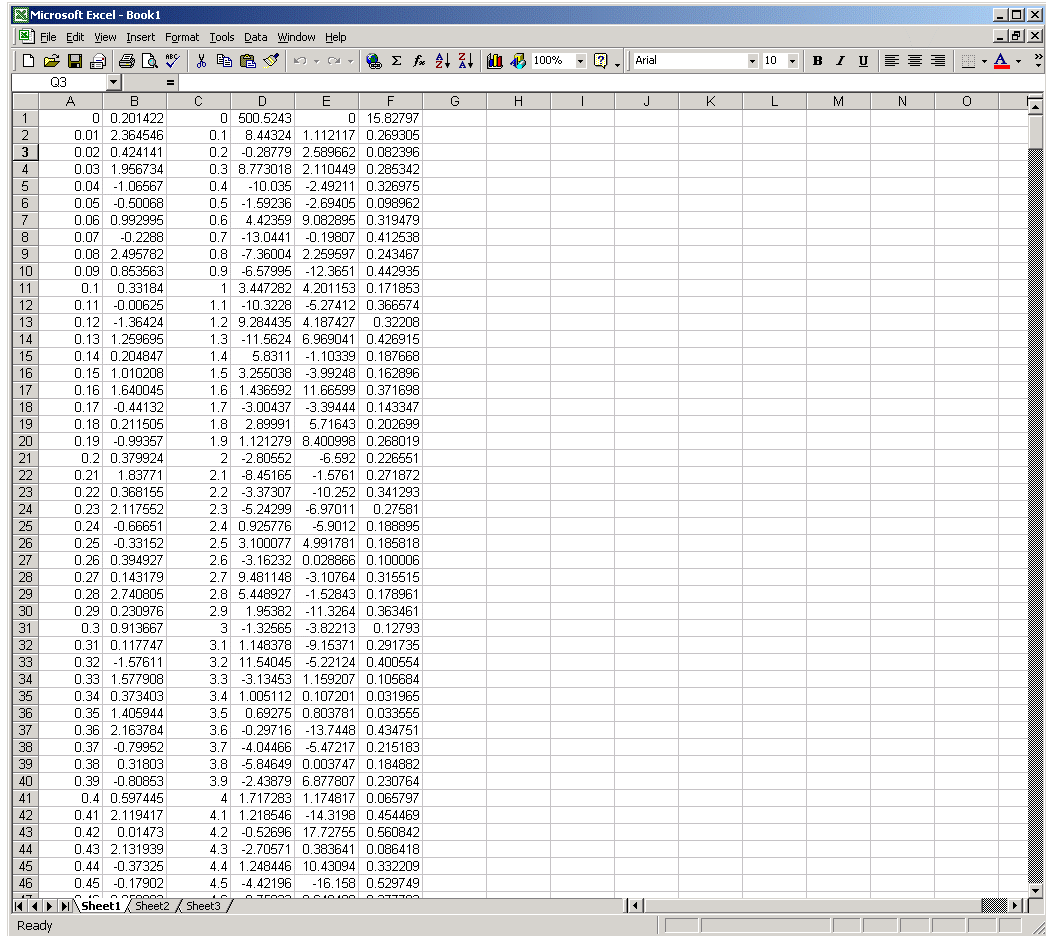
- 2** Click cell A2 and type the formula = A1 + 0.01.
- 3** Drag the formula in cell A2 down the column to cell A1001.  
  
This procedure fills the range A1:A1001 with the interval 0 to 10 incremented by 0.01.
- 4** Click cell B1 and type the formula  $\text{SIN}(2*\text{PI}()*15*A1) + \text{SIN}(2*\text{PI}()*40*A1) + \text{RAND}()$ .
- 5** Repeat the drag procedure to copy this formula to all cells in the range B1:B1001.

### Running the Test

Using the column of data (column B), test the add-in as follows:

- 1** Select **Tools > Spectral Analysis** from the main menu.
- 2** Click **Input Data**.
- 3** Click the B1:B1001 range from the worksheet, or type this address into **Input Data**.
- 4** Click the **Sampling Interval** box and type 0.01.
- 5** Click **Plot time domain signal and power spectral density**.
- 6** Enter C1:C1001 for frequency output. Similarly, enter D1:D1001, E1:E1001, and F1:F1001 for the FFT real and imaginary parts, and spectral density.
- 7** Click **OK** to run the analysis.

The following figure shows the output.




The power spectral density reveals the two signals at 15 and 40 Hz.

## Packaging and Distributing the Add-In

As a final step, package the add-in, the COM component, and all supporting libraries into a self-extracting executable. This package can be installed onto other computers that need to use the Spectral Analysis add-in.

To package and distribute the add-in:

**1** Return to the Deployment Tool and open the Fourier project. (If necessary run the `deploytool` command in the MATLAB product to reopen the Deployment Tool.)

**2** Click the  button in the toolbar.

The builder creates the `Fourier_pkg.exe` self-extracting executable.

**3** To install this add-in onto another computer, copy the `Fourier_pkg.exe` package to that machine, run it from a command prompt, and follow the instructions.

## Univariate Interpolation Example

### In this section...

“Example Overview” on page 14-24

“Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Component” on page 14-24

“Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 14-25

“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form” on page 14-26

### Example Overview

This example is created using the Akima’s Univariate Interpolation example posted by N. Shyamsundar on the MathWorks Web site. You can download the original MATLAB file from <http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/>. Search for *COM Builder Example: Univariate Interpolation*.

This example shows you how to create the COM component using the MATLAB Builder NE product and how to use this COM component in external Microsoft Visual Basic code independent of the MATLAB product.

### Using the Deployment Tool to Create and Build the Component

- 1 At the MATLAB command prompt, change folders to your work folder.
- 2 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in MATLAB:

```
mbuild -setup
```


Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 3 Open the Deployment Tool window.

```
deploytool
```

- 4 Create a project with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Project name	UnivariateInterp
Class name	Interp
Project folder	The name of your work folder followed by the Project name.
Generate Verbose Output	Selected

- 5 Locate your work folder and navigate to the UnivariateInterp folder, and add the MATLAB file to the project.
- 6 Build the component by clicking the  button in the Deployment Tool toolbar.

The build process begins, and a log of the build appears in the **Output** pane of the Deployment Tool. The files that are needed for the component are copied to two newly created folders, `src` and `distrib`, in the UnivariateInterp folder. A copy of the build log is placed in the `src` folder.

## Using the Component in Microsoft Visual Basic

You can call the component from any application that supports COM.

To create a Microsoft Visual Basic project and add references to the necessary libraries:

- 1 Start Visual Basic.
- 2 Create a new Standard EXE project.
- 3 Select **Project > References**.
- 4 Ensure that the following libraries appear:

UnivariateInterp 1.0 Type Library

MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library

---

**Tip** If you do not see these libraries, you may not have registered the libraries using `mwregsvr`. Refer to “Component Registration” on page 15-4 for information on this process.

---

## Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Form

The next step creates a front end or a Microsoft Visual Basic form for the application. Your application receives data from the user through this form.

To create a new user form and populate it with the necessary controls.

- 1** Select **Projects > Component**. Alternatively, press **Ctrl+T**.
- 2** Ensure that **Microsoft Windows Common Controls 6.0** is selected.

You will use the `ListView` control from this component library.

- 3** Add a series of controls to the blank form to create an interface using the properties shown in the following table.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Form	frmInterp	Caption = Univariate Interpolation	Container for all components
Label	lblDataCount	Caption = Number of Data Points	Labels the text box txtNumDataPts
TextBox	txtNumDataPts	Text =	Number of original data points
Label	lblInterp	Caption = Number of Interpolation Points	Labels the text box txtInterp
TextBox	txtInterp	Text =	Number of points over which to interpolate
Label	lblPlot	Caption = Would you like to plot the data?	Labels the check box chkPlot



Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
CheckBox	chkPlot		When selected, a message is sent to the COM component to plot the data.
ListView	lstXData	Name = lstXData GridLines = True LabelEdit = lvwAutomatic View = lvwReport	X-data values. Set the view type to lvwReport to allow the user to add data to the list view.
ListView	lstYData	Name = lstYData GridLines = True LabelEdit = lvwAutomatic View = lvwReport	Y-data values. Set the view type to lvwReport to allow the user to add data to the list view.
ListView	lstInterp	Name = lstInterp GridLines = True LabelEdit = lvwAutomatic View = lvwReport	Interpolation points
CommandButton	cmdEvaluate	Caption = Evaluate Default = True	Executes the function
CommandButton	cmdCancel	Caption = Cancel Cancel = True	Closes the dialog box without executing function

- 4 When the design is complete, save the project by selecting **File > Save**.
- 5 When prompted for the project name, type `Interp.vbp`, and for the form, type `frmInterp.frm`.
- 6 To write the underlying code, right-click **frmInterp** in the Project window and select **View Code**.

The following code listing shows the code to implement. Note that this code references the control and variable names listed above. If you have given a different name to any of the controls or any global variable, change this code to reflect the differences.

```
Private theInterp As UnivariateInterp.Interp 'Variable to hold the COM object

Private Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    ' Unload the form if the user hits the cancel button.
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Initialize()
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    ' Create the COM object
    ' If there is an error, handle it accordingly.
    Set theInterp = New UnivariateInterp.Interp
    ' Set the flags such that the input is always passed as double data.
    theInterp.MWFflags.DataConversionFlags.CoerceNumericToType = mwTypeDouble
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    ' Error handling code
    MsgBox ("Error " & Err.Description)
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
    ' Set the run time properties of the components
    Dim Len1 As Long ' Variable to hold length parameter of the list box
    Dim Len2 As Long ' Variable to hold the length parameter of the list box
    Len2 = lstInterp.Width / 2
    Len1 = (lstInterp.Width - Len2) - 150
    ' Add the column headers to the list boxes
    Call lstXData.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "XData", Len2)
    Call lstYData.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "YData", Len2)
    Call lstInterp.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "Interp Data", Len1)
    Call lstInterp.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "Interp YData", Len2)

    ' Enable the grid lines
    lstXData.GridLines = True
    lstYData.GridLines = True
```

```
lstInterp.GridLines = True
lstInterp.FullRowSelect = True

' Set the Tab indices for each of the components
txtNumDataPts.TabIndex = 1
txtInterp.TabIndex = 2
lstXData.TabIndex = 3
lstYData.TabIndex = 4
lstInterp.TabIndex = 5
cmdEvaluate.TabIndex = 6
cmdCancel.TabIndex = 7
End Sub

Private Sub txtInterp_Change()
' If user changes number of interpolation points, set the interpolation
' point listbox to accomodate the new number of points.
Dim loopCount As Integer ' loop count
Dim numData As Integer
On Error GoTo Handle_Error
' First clear the listbox
Call lstInterp.ListItems.Clear
' Create space for the requested number of interpolation points
If Not (txtInterp.Text = "") Then
    numData = Cdbl(txtInterp.Text)
    For loopCount = 1 To numData
        Call lstInterp.ListItems.Add(loopCount, , "")
    Next
End If
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
' Reset the list to 0 elements and also the text box to an empty string.
MsgBox ("Invalid value for number of Data points")
lstInterp.ListItems.Clear
txtInterp.Text = ""
End Sub

Private Sub txtNumDataPts_Change()
' If the user changes the number of data points, set the XData and YData
' listboxes to accomodate the new number of points.
Dim loopCount As Integer ' loop count
```

```
Dim numData As Integer
On Error GoTo Handle_Error
' First clear both the listbox (XData and YData)
Call lstXData.ListItems.Clear
Call lstYData.ListItems.Clear
' Create space for the requested number of data points (XData and YData).
If Not (txtNumDataPts.Text = "") Then
    numData = CDb1(txtNumDataPts.Text)
    For loopCount = 1 To numData
        Call lstXData.ListItems.Add(loopCount, , "")
        Call lstYData.ListItems.Add(loopCount, , "")
    Next
End If
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
' Reset the list to 0 elements and also the text box to an empty string.
MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.des)
Call lstXData.ListItems.Clear
Call lstYData.ListItems.Clear
txtNumDataPts.Text = ""
End Sub

Private Sub cmdEvaluate_Click()
    ' Dim R As Range
    Dim XDataInterp As Variant ' Result variable object
    Dim loopCount As Integer ' A variable used for loop count
    Dim item As ListItem ' Temporary variable to store data in list box
    Dim XData() As Double ' X value of data points, passed to COM object
    Dim YData() As Double ' Y value of data points, passed to the COM object
    Dim XInterp() As Double ' X value of interpolation points, passed to COM
    ' object
    Dim Yi As Variant ' Y value of interpolation points, obtained from COM
    ' object as ouput value

    ' Set dimensions of the input and ouput data based on user inputs (number
    ' of data points and number of interpolation points).
    ReDim XData(1 To lstXData.ListItems.Count)
    ReDim YData(1 To lstYData.ListItems.Count)
    ReDim XInterp(1 To lstInterp.ListItems.Count)
    ReDim Yi(1 To lstInterp.ListItems.Count)
```

```

' Collect the Data and set the XData, YData, XInterp matrices accordingly
For loopCount = 1 To lstXData.ListItems.Count
    XData(loopCount) = Cdbl(lstXData.ListItems.item(loopCount))
    YData(loopCount) = Cdbl(lstYData.ListItems.item(loopCount))
Next
For loopCount = 1 To lstInterp.ListItems.Count
    XInterp(loopCount) = Cdbl(lstInterp.ListItems.item(loopCount))
    Yi(loopCount) = -1
Next

' Check if the object was created properly.
' If not, go to the error handling routine.

If theInterp Is Nothing Then GoTo Exit_Form

' If there is an error, continue with the code.
On Error GoTo Handle_Error

'Compute Curve Fitting Data
Call theInterp.UnivariateInterpolation(1,Yi,XData,YData,XInterp,_
                                     chkPlot.Value)

'Call lstInterp.ListItems.Clear
For loopCount = LBound(Yi, 2) To UBound(Yi, 2)
    Set item = lstInterp.ListItems(loopCount)
    Call item.ListSubItems.Add(, , Format(Yi(1, loopCount), "##.###"))
Next
Call lstInterp.Refresh
GoTo Exit_Form
Handle_Error:
' Error handling routine
MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
Exit_Form:
End Sub

```

## Matrix Calculator Example

In this section...
“Example Overview” on page 14-32
“Building the Component” on page 14-32
“Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 14-33
“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form” on page 14-34

### Example Overview

This example shows how to encapsulate MATLAB utilities that perform basic matrix arithmetic. It includes MATLAB code that performs matrix addition, subtraction, multiplication, division and left division and a function to evaluate the eigenvalues for a matrix. The example shows how to create the COM component using the MATLAB Builder NE product and how to use the COM component in a Microsoft Visual Basic application independent of the MATLAB product.

---

**Note** This example assumes that you have downloaded the MATLAB code from <http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/> to your work folder. To get the download, search the File Exchange at matlabcentral for MatrixArith.

---

### Building the Component

- 1 At the MATLAB command prompt, change folders to the MatrixMath folder in your work folder.
- 2 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in MATLAB:


```
mbuild -setup
```

Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 3 Enter the command `deploytool` to open the Deployment Tool window.
- 4 Create a project with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Project name	<code>matrixMath</code>
Class name	<code>matrixMathclass</code>
Project folder	The name of your work folder followed by the project name
Generate Verbose Output	Selected

- 5 Locate your work folder and navigate to the `matrixMath` folder, which contains the MATLAB files needed for the component.
- 6 Add the following files to the project:
  - `addMatrices.m`
  - `divideMatrices.m`
  - `eigenValue.m`
  - `leftDivideMatrices.m`
  - `multiplyMatrices.m`
  - `subtractMatrices.m`

- 7 Build the component by clicking the  button in the Deployment Tool toolbar.

The build process begins, and a log of the build appears in the **Output** pane of the Deployment Tool. The files that are needed for the component are copied to two newly created folders, `src` and `distrib`, in the `matrixMath` folder. A copy of the build log is placed in the `src` folder.

## Using the Component in Microsoft Visual Basic

You can call the component from any application that supports COM. Follow these steps to create a Microsoft Visual Basic project and add references to the necessary libraries.

- 1 Start Visual Basic.
- 2 Create a new Standard EXE project.
- 3 Select **Project > References**.
- 4 Ensure that the following libraries are in the project:

MatrixMath 1.0 Type Library

MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library

---

**Note** If you do not see these libraries, you may not have registered the libraries using `mwregsvr`. Refer to “Component Registration” on page 15-4 for information on this.

---

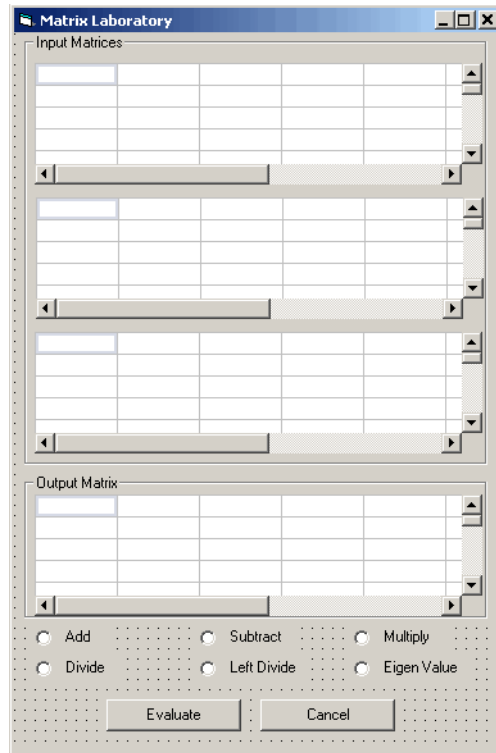
### Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Form

The next step creates a front end or a Microsoft Visual Basic form for the application. End users enter data in this form.

To create a new user form and populate it with the necessary controls:

- 1 Select **Projects > Component**. Alternatively, press **Ctrl+T**.
- 2 Make sure that **Microsoft Windows Common Controls 6.0** is selected. You will use the Spreadsheet control from this component library.
- 3 Add a series of controls to the blank form to create an interface as shown in the next figure.





- 4 One of the main components used in the Visual Basic form is a Spreadsheet component. For each Spreadsheet component, set properties as follows.

Property	Original Value	New Value
DisplayColumnHeaders	True	False
DisplayHorizontalScrollBar	True	False
DisplayRowHeaders	True	False
DisplayTitleBar	True	False
DisplayToolBar	True	False
DisplayVerticalScrollBar	True	False
MaximumWidth	80%	100%
ViewableRange	1:65536	A1:E5

A consolidated list of components added to the form and the properties modified is as follows.

<b>Control Type</b>	<b>Control Name</b>	<b>Properties</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
Form	frmMatrixMath	Caption = Matrix Laboratory	Container for all components
Frame	frmInput	Caption = Input Data Points	Groups all input controls
Frame	frmOutput	Caption = Output Coefficients	Groups all output controls
Spreadsheet	sheetMat1	Refer to previous table.	Accepts input matrix 1 from user
Spreadsheet	sheetMat2	Refer to previous table.	Accepts input matrix 2 from user
Spreadsheet	sheetMat3	Refer to previous table.	Accepts input matrix 3 from user
Spreadsheet	sheetResultMat	Refer to previous table.	Displays result matrix
Label	lblAdd	Caption = Add	Labels <b>Add</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 0	Option button to perform addition
Label	lblSub	Caption = Subtract	Labels <b>Subtract</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 1	Option button to perform subtraction
Label	lblMult	Caption = Multiply	Labels <b>Multiply</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 2	Option button to perform multiplication
Label	lblDivide	Caption = Divide	Labels <b>Divide</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 3	Option button to perform division

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Label	lblLeftDivide	Caption = Left Divide	Labels <b>Left Divide</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 4	Option button to perform left division
Label	lblEig	Caption = Eigenvalue	Labels <b>Eigenvalue</b> option button
OptionButton	optOperation	Index = 5	Option button to calculate Eigenvalue of first matrix
CommandButton	cmdEvaluate	Caption = Evaluate Default = True	Executes function
CommandButton	cmdCancel	Caption = Cancel Cancel = True	Closes dialog box without executing function

- 5 When the design is complete, save the project by selecting **File > Save**. When prompted for the project name, type `MatrixMathVB.vbp`, and for the form, type `frmMatrixMath.frm`.
- 6 To write the underlying code, right-click **frmMatrixMath** in the Project window, and select **View Code**.

The following code listing shows the code to implement. Note that this code references the control and variable names listed above. If you have given a different name to any of the controls or any global variable, change this code to reflect the differences.

```
Dim theMatCal As matrixMath.matrixMath

Private Sub Form_Initialize()
' Create an instance of the COM object and set the MWArray flags.
' If this fails, exit from the form.
On Error GoTo exit_form
' Create the object.
Set theMatCal = New matrixMath.matrixMath
```

```
' Force the input to be of type double.
theMatCal.MWFlags.DataConversionFlags.CoerceNumericToType = mwTypeDouble
' Set the AutoResizeOutput flag to True, so that you do not have to specify
' the size of the output variable as returned by the COM object.
theMatCal.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.AutoResizeOutput = True
' Get the results in a Matrix format.
theMatCal.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.OutputArrayFormat = _
mwArrayFormatMatrix
Exit Sub
exit_form:
' Error handling routine. Since no object is created, display error '
' message and unload the form.
MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
' Set the run time properties for all the components.
frmInputs.TabIndex = 1
sheetMat1.AutoFit = True

' Set the tab order for each component and the viewable range.
' If you need a larger viewable range, you might want to turn the
' horizontal and vertical scroll bars to TRUE.
sheetMat1.TabStop = True
sheetMat1.TabIndex = 1
sheetMat1.Width = 4875
sheetMat1.ViewableRange = "A1:E5"

sheetMat2.TabStop = True
sheetMat2.TabIndex = 2
sheetMat2.Width = 4875
sheetMat2.ViewableRange = "A1:E5"

sheetMat3.TabStop = True
sheetMat3.TabIndex = 3
sheetMat3.Width = 4875
sheetMat3.ViewableRange = "A1:E5"

sheetResultMatTabStop = False
```

```
sheetResultMatTabIndex = 1
sheetResultMatWidth = 4875
sheetResultMat.ViewableRange = "A1:E5"

frmOutput.TabIndex = 2
optOperation(0).TabIndex = 3
optOperation(1).TabIndex = 4
optOperation(2).TabIndex = 5
optOperation(3).TabIndex = 6
optOperation(4).TabIndex = 7
optOperation(5).TabIndex = 8
End Sub

Private Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    ' When the user clicks on the Cancel button, unload the form.
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub cmdEval_Click()
    ' Declare the variables to be used in the code
    Dim data1 As Range
    ' This is the temporary variable that holds the value entered in
    ' the spreadsheet.

    'Dim finalRows As Double ' The number of
    'Dim finalCols As Double

    ' Dim tempVal As Double
    Dim matArray1 As Variant ' Variable to hold the value of input Matrix 1,
    ' passed to the COM object directly.
    Dim matArray2 As Variant ' Variable to hold the value of input Matrix 1,
    ' passed via varArg variable.
    Dim matArray3 As Variant ' Variable to hold the value of input Matrix 1,
    ' passed via varArg variable.
    Dim varArg(2) As Variant ' Variable to hold the value of input Matrix 1,,
    ' contains the two optional matrices and is passed to the COM object.

    'Dim mat1() As Double
    'Dim mat1Dimension2() As Variant
```

```
Dim tempRange As Range ' Take the range value as obtained from the
                        ' user input into a temporary range.
Dim resultMat As Variant ' Variable to take the result matrix in
Dim msg As String ' The message thrown by the COM object is taken
                  ' in this variable.

Call sheetResultMat.ActiveSheet.UsedRange.Clear

' Check if the COM object was created properly.
' If not exit
If theMatCal Is Nothing Then GoTo exit_form

' Get the used range of data from the sheetMat1, which will then be
' converted into matArray1.
Set data1 = sheetMat1.ActiveSheet.UsedRange

'finalRows = data1.Rows.Count
'finalCols = data1.Columns.Count

'ReDim mat1(1 To data1.Rows.Count)
'ReDim mat1Dimension2(1 To data1.Columns.Count)
ReDim matArray1(1 To data1.Rows.Count, 1 To data1.Columns.Count) As_
Double
For RowCount = 1 To data1.Rows.Count
    For ColCount = 1 To data1.Columns.Count
        ' Extract the values and populate input matrix 1.
        Set tempRange = data1.Cells(RowCount, ColCount)
        'tempVal = tempRange.Value
        'matArray1(RowCount, ColCount) = tempVal
        matArray1(RowCount, ColCount) = tempRange.Value
        'Set mat1(ColCount) = tempRange.Value
    Next ColCount
    ' mat1Dimension2(RowCount) = mat1()
Next RowCount

Set data1 = sheetMat2.ActiveSheet.UsedRange
If (Not (data1.Value = "")) Then
    ReDim matArray2(1 To data1.Rows.Count, 1 To data1.Columns.Count) As_
    Double
    For RowCount = 1 To data1.Rows.Count
```

```

        For ColCount = 1 To data1.Columns.Count
            Set tempRange = data1.Cells(RowCount, ColCount)
            tempVal = tempRange.Value
            matArray2(RowCount, ColCount) = tempVal
        Next ColCount
    Next RowCount
    finalCols = data1.Columns.Count
    varArg(0) = matArray2
End If

Set data1 = sheetMat3.ActiveSheet.UsedRange
If (Not (data1.Value = "")) Then
    ReDim matArray3(1 To data1.Rows.Count, 1 To data1.Columns.Count) As_
Double
    For RowCount = 1 To data1.Rows.Count
        For ColCount = 1 To data1.Columns.Count
            Set tempRange = data1.Cells(RowCount, ColCount)
            tempVal = tempRange.Value
            matArray3(RowCount, ColCount) = tempVal
        Next ColCount
    Next RowCount
    finalCols = data1.Columns.Count
    varArg(1) = matArray3
End If

' Based on the operation selected by the user, call the appropriate method
' from the COM object.
If optOperation.Item(0).Value = True Then ' Add
    Call theMatCal.addMatrices(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1, varArg)
ElseIf optOperation.Item(1).Value = True Then ' Subtract
    Call theMatCal.subtractMatrices(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1, varArg)
ElseIf optOperation.Item(2).Value = True Then ' Multiply
    Call theMatCal.multiplyMatrices(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1, varArg)
ElseIf optOperation.Item(3).Value = True Then ' Divide
    Call theMatCal.divideMatrices(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1, varArg)
ElseIf optOperation.Item(4).Value = True Then ' Left Divide
    Call theMatCal.leftDivideMatrices(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1, _
varArg)
ElseIf optOperation.Item(5).Value = True Then ' Eigen Value
    Call theMatCal.eigenValue(2, resultMat, msg, matArray1)

```

```
End If

' If the result matrix is a scalar double, display it in the first cell.
If (VarType(resultMat) = vbDouble) Then
    Set tempRange = sheetResultMat.Cells(1, 1)
    tempRange.Value = resultMat

' If the result matrix is not a scalar double, loop through it to display
' all the elements.
Else
    For RowCount = 1 To UBound(resultMat, 1)
        For ColCount = 1 To UBound(resultMat, 2)
            Set tempRange = sheetResultMat.Cells(RowCount, ColCount)
            tempRange.Value = resultMat(RowCount, ColCount)
        Next ColCount
    Next RowCount
End If
Exit Sub
exit_form:
    MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
    Unload Me
End Sub

' If the user changes the operation, clear the result matrix.
Private Sub optOperation_Click(Index As Integer)
    Call sheetResultMat.ActiveSheet.Cells.Clear
End Sub
```



## Curve Fitting Example

In this section...
“Example Overview” on page 14-43
“Building the Component” on page 14-43
“Building the Project” on page 14-44
“Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 14-44
“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form” on page 14-45

### Example Overview

This example demonstrates the optimal fitting of a nonlinear function to a set of data, using the curve-fitting demo `fitfun` provided with the MATLAB product. It uses `fminsearch`, an implementation of the Nelder-Mead simplex (direct search) algorithm, to minimize a nonlinear function of several variables.

This example shows you how to create the COM component using the MATLAB Builder NE product and how to use this COM component in a Microsoft Visual Basic application independent of MATLAB.

---

**Note** This example assumes that you have downloaded the MATLAB code from <http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/> to the *matlabroot* folder. To get the download, search the File Exchange at matlabcentral for COM Builder Demo: Curve Fitting.

---

### Building the Component

- 1 At the MATLAB command prompt, change folders to *matlabroot*.
- 2 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in MATLAB:


```
mbuild -setup
```

Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 3 Enter the `deploytool` command to open the Deployment Tool window.
- 4 Create a project with the following settings:

Project name	CurveFit
Class name	CurveFitclass

### Building the Project

- 1 In the Deployment Tool window, add `fitfun.m` and `fitdemo.m` from the folder `matlabroot/CurveFitDemo`.
- 2 Click the  button in the toolbar.

The component is created and placed in the `distrib` folder within the `Classfolder`.

### Using the Component in Microsoft Visual Basic

You can call the component from any application that supports COM.

To create a Microsoft Visual Basic project and add references to the necessary libraries:

- 1 Start Visual Basic.
- 2 Create a new Standard EXE project.
- 3 Select **Project > References**.
- 4 Ensure that the following libraries are included in the project:

CurveFit 1.0 Type Library  
MWComUtil 7.5 Type Library

---

**Note** If you do not see these libraries, you may not have registered the libraries using `mwregsvr`. Refer to “Component Registration” on page 15-4 for information.

---

## Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Form

The next step is to create a front end or a Microsoft Visual Basic form for the application. End users enter data on the form.

To create a new user form and populate it with the necessary controls:

- 1** Select **Projects > Component**. Alternatively, press **Ctrl+T**.
- 2** Make sure that **Microsoft Windows Common Controls 6.0** is selected. You will use the `ListView` control from this component library.
- 3** Add a series of controls to the blank form to create an interface.

The following table shows the components and properties that are required.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Form	frmCurveFit	Caption = Curve Fitting	Container for all components.
Frame	frmInput	Name = frmInput* Caption = Input Data Points	Groups all input controls.
Frame	frmOutput	Name = frmOutput* Caption = Output Coefficients	Groups all output controls.
Label	lblNumDataPoints	Caption = Number of Data Points	Labels the text box that takes the number of data points the user wants to enter.

<b>Control Type</b>	<b>Control Name</b>	<b>Properties</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
TextBox	txtNumOfDatPoints	Text =	Holds number of data points the user wants to enter. Sets size of list box added later.
ListView	lstXData	Name = lstXData GridLines = TrueLabel Edit = lvwAutomatic View = lvwReport	X-data values. Set the view type to lvwReport to enable user to add data to the list view.
ListView	lstYData	Name = lstYData GridLines = TrueLabel Edit = lvwAutomatic View = lvwReport	Y-data values.
Label	lblCoeff1*	Caption = Co-efficient 1	Labels text box for coefficient 1.
Label	lblCoeff2	Caption = Co-efficient 2	Labels text box for coefficient 2.
TextBox	txtCoeff1	Text =	Displays value of coefficient 1 as calculated by the COM module.
TextBox	txtCoeff2	Text =	Displays value of coefficient 2 as calculated by the COM module.
Label	lblLambda1*	Caption = Lambda 1	Labels text box for lambda 1.
Label	lblLambda2	Caption = Lambda 2	Labels text box for lambda 2.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
TextBox	txtLambda1	Text =	Displays value of lambda 1 as calculated by the COM module.
TextBox	txtLambda2	Text =	Displays value of lambda 2 as calculated by the COM module.
CommandButton	cmdEvaluate	Caption = Evaluate Default = True	Executes function.
CommandButton	cmdCancel	Caption = Cancel Cancel = True	Closes dialog box without executing the function.

- 4 When the design is complete, save the project by selecting **File > Save**.
- 5 When prompted for the project name, type `CurveFitExample.vbp`, and for the form, type `frmCurveFit.frm`.
- 6 In the Project window, right-click `frmCurveFit` and select **View Code**.

The following code listing shows the code to implement. Note that this code references the control and variable names listed above. If you have given a different name to any of the controls or any global variable, change this code to reflect the differences.

```

Dim theFit As CurveFit.CurveFit ' Variable to hold the COM Object

' This routine is executed when the form is initialized.
Private Sub Form_Initialize()
' If the initialize routine fails, handle it accordingly.
On Error GoTo Exit_Form
' Create the COM object
Set theFit = New CurveFit.CurveFit
' Set the flags such that the output is transposed.

```

```
        theFit.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.TransposeOutput = True
    Exit Sub
Exit_Form:
    ' Display the error message and Unload the form if object
creation failed
    MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
    MsgBox ("Error: Could not create the COM object")
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Load()
On Error GoTo Exit_Form
    ' Set the runtime properties of the components

    ' Set the headers of the column
    Call lstXData.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "X Data")
    Call lstYData.ColumnHeaders.Add(, , "Y Data")

    ' Make labeledit property automatic so that you edit the label.
    lstXData.LabelEdit = lvwAutomatic
    lstYData.LabelEdit = lvwAutomatic

    ' Make the grid lines for the listbox visible.
    lstXData.GridLines = True
    lstYData.GridLines = True
    Exit Sub
Exit_Form:
    ' Error handling routine. Since cannot load the form,
    ' display the error message and unload the program.
    MsgBox ("Error: Could not load the form")
    MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    ' If the user hits the cancel button, unload the form.
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub txtNumOfDataPoints_Change()
```

```

' If user changes number of data points, clear XData and YData
' listboxes. Provide enough spaces for given number of points.
Dim loopCount As Integer
Call lstXData.ListItems.Clear
Call lstYData.ListItems.Clear
If (txtNumOfDataPoints.Text = "") Then
    Exit Sub
End If
For loopCount = 1 To CInt(txtNumOfDataPoints.Text)
    lstXData.ListItems.Add (loopCount)
    lstYData.ListItems.Add (loopCount)
Next loopCount
End Sub

Private Sub cmdEvaluate_Click()
    Dim loopCount As Integer ' loop counter
    Dim numOfData As Integer ' variable to hold the number of data
    ' points the user has entered

    Dim XData() As Double ' Column Vector for XData, will be passed
    ' as input to the COM method.

    Dim YData() As Double ' Column Vector for YData, will be passed
    ' as input to the COM method.

    Dim Coeff As Variant ' Coefficient values will be returned by
    ' the COM method in this variable.

    Dim Lambda As Variant ' Lambda values will be returned by the
    ' COM method in this variable.

    ' If there is an error, handle it accordingly.
On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    If txtNumOfDataPoints.Text = "" Then
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ' Get the number of data points.
    numOfData = CInt(txtNumOfDataPoints.Text)
    ReDim XData(1 To numOfData) As Double
    ReDim YData(1 To numOfData) As Double
    ' Read the input data into respective double arrays.
    For loopCount = 1 To numOfData
        XData(loopCount) = lstXData.ListItems.Item(loopCount)
        YData(loopCount) = lstYData.ListItems.Item(loopCount)
    
```

```
Next loopCount

' Call the COM method
Call theFit.fitdemo(2, Coeff, Lambda, XData, YData)

' Display values of coefficients returned by the COM method.
txtCoeff1.Text = CStr(Format(Coeff(1, 1), "##.####"))
txtCoeff2.Text = CStr(Format(Coeff(1, 2), "##.####"))
txtLambda1.Text = CStr(Format(Lambda(1, 1), "##.####"))
txtLambda2.Text = CStr(Format(Lambda(1, 2), "##.####"))
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
' Error handling routine
MsgBox ("Error: " & Err.Description)
End Sub
```



# Bouncing Ball Simulation Example

## In this section...

“Example Overview” on page 14-51

“Building the Component” on page 14-51

“Using the Component in Microsoft® Visual Basic” on page 14-52

“Creating the Microsoft® Visual Basic Form” on page 14-53

## Example Overview

This example is adapted from the `ballode` demo provided with the MATLAB product. It demonstrates repeated event location, where the conditions are changed after each terminal event.

This demo computes 10 bounces with calls to `ode23`, which is a MATLAB function. A user-specified damping factor after each bounce attenuates the speed of the ball. The trajectory is plotted using the output function `odeplot`. In addition to the damping factor, the user can also provide the initial velocity, the maximum number of bounce to track, and the maximum time until demo is completed.

This example shows you how to create the COM component using the MATLAB Builder NE product and how to use this COM component in a Visual Basic application independent of MATLAB.

---

**Note** This example assumes that you have downloaded the MATLAB code to the `matlabroot` folder.

---

## Building the Component


- 1 At the MATLAB command prompt, change folders to `matlabroot/BallODE`.
- 2 If you have not already done so, execute the following command in MATLAB:

```
mbuild -setup
```

Be sure to choose a supported compiler. See “Compiler Requirements” on page 10-2.

- 3 Enter the command `deploytool` to open the Deployment Tool window.
- 4 Use the Deployment Tool to create a project with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Project name	bouncingBall
Class name	bouncingBallclass
Project folder	The name of your work folder followed by the component name
Generate Verbose Output	Selected

- 5 Locate your work folder, navigate to `matlabroot/Ball10DE`, and add `ballode.m` to the project.
- 6 Build the component by clicking the  button in the Deployment Tool toolbar.

The build process begins, and a log of the build appears in the **Output** pane of the Deployment Tool window. The files that are needed for the component are copied to two newly created folders, `src` and `distrib`, in the `bouncingBall` folder. A copy of the build log is placed in the `src` folder.

### Using the Component in Microsoft Visual Basic

You can call the component from any application that supports COM.

To create a Microsoft Visual Basic project and add references to the necessary libraries:

- 1 Start Visual Basic.
- 2 Create a new Standard EXE project.
- 3 Select **Project > References**.

**4** Select the following libraries:

- bouncingBall 1.0 Type Library

(If you named your class something other than bouncingBall or gave a different version number, click and use the appropriate component and corresponding type library.)

- MComUtil 7.5 Type Library

---

**Note** If you do not see these libraries, you may not have registered the libraries using `mregsvr`. Refer to “Component Registration” on page 15-4 for information on this.

---

## Creating the Microsoft Visual Basic Form

The next task is to create a front end or a Microsoft Visual Basic form for the application. End users enter data with this form.

To create a new user form and populate it with the necessary controls:

- 1** Select **Projects > Component**. Alternatively, press **Ctrl+T**.
- 2** Check that **Microsoft Windows Common Controls 6.0** is selected. You will use the `ListView` control from this component library.
- 3** Add a series of controls to the blank form to create an interface with the properties listed in the following table.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
Form	frmBall10de	Caption = Bouncing Ball ODE	Container for all components.
Frame	frmInput	Name = frmInput* Caption = Input Data Points	Groups all input controls.

<b>Control Type</b>	<b>Control Name</b>	<b>Properties</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
Frame	frmOutput	Name = frmOutput* Caption = Output Coefficients	Groups all output controls.
Label	lblInitVal	Caption = Initial Velocity	Labels the text box txtInitVal.
TextBox	txtInitVal	Text =	Holds initial velocity by which ball is thrown into the air.
Label	lblDamp	Caption = Damping Factor	Labels the text box txtDamp.
TextBox	txtDamp	Text =	Holds damping factor for the bounce, that is, the factor by which the speed of the ball is reduced after it bounces.
Label	lblIter	Caption = Number of Bounces	Labels the text box txtIter.
TextBox	txtIter	Text =	Holds number of iterations or bounces to track.
Label	lblFinalTime	Caption = Maximum Time	Labels the text box txtFinalTime.
TextBox	txtFinalTime	Text =	Stores time until demo is completed.
ListView	lstBounce	Name = lstBounce GridLines = True LabelEdit = lvwManual View = lvwReport	Displays the time stamp when ball bounces off the ground.

Control Type	Control Name	Properties	Purpose
CommandButton	cmdEvaluate	Caption = Evaluate Default = True	Executes the function.
CommandButton	cmdCancel	Caption = Cancel Cancel = True	Closes the dialog box without executing the function.

**4** When the design is complete, save the project by selecting **File > Save**. When prompted for the project name, type `Ball0de.vbp`, and for the form, type `frmBall0de.frm`.

**5** In the Project dialog box, right-click `frmBall0de` and select **View Code**.

The following code listing shows the code to implement. Note that this code references the control and variable names listed above. If you have given a different name to any of the controls or any global variable, change this code to reflect the differences.

```
Private theBall As Variant ' Variable to hold the COM object.

Private Sub cmdCancel_Click()
    ' If the user presses the Cancel button, unload the form.
    Unload Me
End Sub

Private Sub Form_Initialize()
    Dim Len1 As Long ' Used to set length of columns for list box.
    Dim Len2 As Long ' Used to set length of columns for list box.
    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    ' Set length of the each column based on length of the listbox
    ' such that the two columns span the maximum area without
    ' creating a horizontal scroll bar.
    Len2 = lstBounce.Width / 2
    Len1 = (lstBounce.Width - Len2) - 300

    ' Add column headers to each column in the list box.
    Call lstBounce.ColumnHeaders.Add(, "Bounce", Len1)
    Call lstBounce.ColumnHeaders.Add(, "Time", Len2)
```

```
' Set tab indices for each component.
txtInitVel.TabIndex = 1
txtDamp.TabIndex = 2
txtIter.TabIndex = 3
txtFinalTime.TabIndex = 4
cmdEvaluate.TabIndex = 5
cmdCancel.TabIndex = 6
lstBounce.TabStop = False

' Create the COM object
' If there is an error, handle it accordingly.
Set theBall = CreateObject("bouncingBall.bouncingBall.1_0")
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
' Error handling code
MsgBox ("Error " & Err.Description)
End Sub
Private Sub cmdEvaluate_Click()
' Dim R As Range
Dim zeroTime As Variant ' Result variable object.
Dim loopCount As Integer
Dim item As ListItem

' Check if the object was created properly.
' If not, go to the error handling routine.
If theBall Is Nothing Then GoTo Exit_Form

' If there is an error, continue with the code.
On Error Resume Next

' Process inputs
' If the user does not provide the values for input parameters,
' use the default values.
If txtDamp.Text = Empty Then
    txtDamp.Text = 0.9
End If
If txtInitVel.Text = Empty Then
    txtInitVel.Text = 20
End If
If txtIter.Text = Empty Then
```

```
        txtIter.Text = 15
    End If
    If txtFinalTime.Text = Empty Then
        txtFinalTime.Text = 20
    End If

    'Compute Bouncing ball data
    Call theBall.ballode(1, zeroTime, CDb1(txtIter.Text),_
    CDb1(txtDamp.Text), CDb1(txtFinalTime.Text),_
    CDb1(txtInitVel.Text))

    ' Display the output values (time stamp when ball bounces on
    ' the ground).
    Call lstBounce.ListItems.Clear
    For loopCount = LBound(zeroTime, 1) To UBound(zeroTime, 1)
        Set item = lstBounce.ListItems.Add(, , Format(loopCount))
        Call item.ListSubItems.Add(, , Format(zeroTime(loopCount,_
        1), "##.###"))
    Next
    Call lstBounce.Refresh

    GoTo Exit_Form
Handle_Error:
    ' Error handling routine
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
Exit_Form:
End Sub
```





# How the MATLAB Builder NE Product Creates COM Components

---

- “Overview of Internal Processes” on page 15-2
- “Component Registration” on page 15-4
- “Data Conversion” on page 15-9
- “Calling Conventions” on page 15-23

## Overview of Internal Processes

In this section...
“How Is a MATLAB® Builder NE Component Created?” on page 15-2
“Code Generation” on page 15-2
“Create Interface Definitions” on page 15-3
“C++ Compilation” on page 15-3
“Linking and Resource Binding” on page 15-3
“Registration of the DLL” on page 15-3

### How Is a MATLAB Builder NE Component Created?

The process of creating a MATLAB Builder NE component is completely automatic from a user point of view. You specify a list of MATLAB files to process and a few additional pieces of information, such as the component name, the class names, and the version number.

### Code Generation

The first step in the build process generates all source code and other supporting files needed to create the component. It also creates the main source file (`mycomponent_dll.cpp`) containing the implementation of each exported function of the DLL. The compiler additionally produces an Interface Description Language (IDL) file (`mycomponent_idl.idl`), containing the specifications for the component's type library, interface, and class, with associated GUIDs. (GUID is an acronym for Globally Unique Identifier, a 128-bit integer guaranteed always to be unique.)

Created next are the C++ class definition and implementation files (`myclass_com.hpp` and `myclass_com.cpp`). In addition to these source files, the compiler generates a DLL exports file (`mycomponent.def`) and a resource script.

## Create Interface Definitions

The second step of the build process invokes the IDL compiler on the IDL file generated in step 1 (`mycomponent_idl.idl`), creating the interface header file (`mycomponent_idl.h`), the interface GUID file (`mycomponent_idl_i.c`), and the component type library file (`mycomponent_idl.tlb`). The interface header file contains type definitions and function declarations based on the interface definition in the IDL file. The interface GUID file contains the definitions of the GUIDs from all interfaces in the IDL file. The component type library file contains a binary representation of all types and objects exposed by the component.

## C++ Compilation

The third step compiles all C/C++ source files generated in steps 1 and 2 into object code. One additional file containing a set of C++ template classes (`mc1comclass.h`) is included at this point. This file contains template implementations of all necessary COM base classes, as well as error handling and registration code.

## Linking and Resource Binding

The fourth step produces the finished DLL for the component. This step invokes the linker on the object files generated in step 3 and the necessary MATLAB libraries to produce a DLL component (`mycomponent_1_0.dll`). The resource compiler is then invoked on the DLL, along with the resource script generated in step 1, to bind the type library file generated in step 2 into the completed DLL.

## Registration of the DLL

The final build step registers the DLL on the system, as described in “Component Registration” on page 15-4.

## Component Registration

### In this section...

“Self-Registering Components” on page 15-4

“Globally Unique Identifier” on page 15-5

“Versioning” on page 15-7

### Self-Registering Components

When the MATLAB Builder NE product creates a component, it automatically generates a binary file called a *type library*. As a final step of the build, this file is bound with the resulting DLL as a resource.

MATLAB Builder NE COM components are all *self-registering*. A self-registering component contains all the necessary code to add or remove a full description of itself to or from the system registry. The `mwregsvr` utility, distributed with the MCR, registers self-registering DLLs. For example, to register a component called `mycomponent_1_0.dll`, issue this command at the DOS command prompt:

```
mwregsvr mycomponent_1_0.dll
```

When `mwregsvr` completes the registration process, it displays a message indicating success or failure. Similarly, the command

```
mwregsvr /u mycomponent_1_0.dll
```

unregisters the component.

A component installed onto a particular machine must be registered with `mwregsvr`. If you move a component into a different folder on the same machine, you must repeat the registration process. When deleting a component from a specific machine, first unregister it to ensure that the registry does not retain erroneous information.

---

**Tip** The `mwregsvr` utility invokes a process that is similar to `regsvr32.exe`, except that `mwregsvr` does not require interaction with a user at the console. The `regsvr32.exe` process belongs to the Windows OS and is used to register dynamic link libraries and Microsoft® ActiveX® controls in the registry. This program is important for the stable and secure running of your computer and should not be terminated. You must specify the full path of the component when calling `mwregsvr`, or make the call from the folder in which the component resides. You can use `regsvr32.exe` as an alternative to `mwregsvr` to register your library.

---

## Globally Unique Identifier

Information is stored in the registry as keys with one or more associated named values. The keys themselves have values of primarily two types: readable strings and GUIDs. (GUID is an acronym for Globally Unique Identifier, a 128-bit integer guaranteed always to be unique.)

The builder automatically generates GUIDs for COM classes, interfaces, and type libraries that are defined within a component at build time, and codes these keys into the component's self-registration code.

The interface to the system registry is folder based. COM-related information is stored under a top-level key called `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT`. Under `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT` are several other keys under which the builder writes component information.

---

**Caution** Do not delete the DLL-file in your project's `src` folder between builds. Doing so causes the GUIDs to be regenerated on the subsequent build. To preserve an older version of the DLL, register it on your system before rebuilding your project.

---

See the following table for a list of the keys and their definitions.

<b>Key</b>	<b>Definition</b>
HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID	Information about COM classes on the system. Each component creates a new key under HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\CLSID for each of its COM classes. The key created has a value of the GUID that has been assigned the class and contains several subkeys with information about the class.
HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\Interface	Information about COM interfaces on the system. Each component creates a new key under HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\Interface for each interface it defines. This key has the value of the GUID assigned to the interface and contains subkeys with information about the interface.
HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\TypeLib	Information about type libraries on the system. Each component creates a key for its type library with the value of the GUID assigned to it. Under this key a new key is created for each version of the type library. Therefore, new versions of type libraries with the same name reuse the original GUID but create a new subkey for the new version.
HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ <progid&gt;, hkey_classes_root\<verindprogid&gt;<="" td=""> <td> <p>These two keys are created for the component's Program ID and Version Independent Program ID. These keys are constructed from strings of the following forms:</p> <p><i>component-name.class-name</i>  <i>component-name.class-name</i></p> </td> </progid&gt;,>	<p>These two keys are created for the component's Program ID and Version Independent Program ID. These keys are constructed from strings of the following forms:</p> <p><i>component-name.class-name</i>  <i>component-name.class-name</i></p>

Key	Definition
	<p><i>version-number</i></p> <p>These keys are useful for creating a class instance from the component and class names instead of the GUIDs.</p>

## Versioning

MATLAB Builder NE components support a simple versioning mechanism designed to make building and deploying multiple versions of the same component easy to implement. The version number of a component appears as part of the DLL name, as well as part of the version-dependent ID in the system registry.

When a component is created, you can specify a version number. (The default is 1.0.) During the development of a specific version of a component, the version number should be kept constant. When this is done, the MATLAB Compiler product, in certain cases, reuses type library, class, and interface GUIDs for each subsequent build of the component. This avoids the creation of an excessive number of registry keys for the same component during multiple builds, as occurs if new GUIDs are generated for each build.

When a new version number is introduced, MATLAB Compiler generates new class and interface GUIDs so that the system recognizes them as distinct from previous versions, even if the class name is the same. Therefore, once you deploy a built component, use a new version number for any changes made to the component. This ensures that after you deploy the new component, it is easy to manage the two versions.

MATLAB Compiler implements the versioning rules for a specific component name, class name, and version number by querying the system registry for an existing component with the same name:

- If an existing component has the same version, it uses the GUID of the existing component's type library. If the name of the new class matches the

previous version, it reuses the class and interface GUIDs. If the class names do not match, it generates new GUIDs for the new class and interface.

- If it finds an existing component with a different version, it uses the existing type library GUID and creates a new subkey for the new version number. It generates new GUIDs for the new class and interface.
- If it does not find an existing component of the specified name, it generates new GUIDs for the component's type library, class, and interface.



## Data Conversion

In this section...
“Conversion Rules” on page 15-9
“Array Formatting Flags” on page 15-19
“Data Conversion Flags” on page 15-21

### Conversion Rules

This section describes the data conversion rules for COM components created with the MATLAB Builder NE product. These components are dual interface COM objects that support data types compatible with Automation.

---

**Note** *Automation* (formerly called OLE Automation) is a technology that allows software packages to expose their unique features to scripting tools and other applications. Automation uses the Component Object Model (COM), but may be implemented independently from other OLE features, such as in-place activation.

---

---

**Caution** Be aware that IIS (Internet Information Service) usually prevents most COM automation on the basis that it may pose a security risk. Therefore, XLSREAD and other Automation services may fail when served by IIS, leading to errors such as `object reference not set`.

---

When a method is invoked on a MATLAB Builder NE component, the input parameters are converted to MATLAB internal array format and passed to the compiled MATLAB function. When the function exits, the output parameters are converted from MATLAB internal array format to COM Automation types.

The COM client passes all input and output arguments in the compiled MATLAB functions as type `VARIANT`. The COM `VARIANT` type is a union of several simple data types. A type `VARIANT` variable can store a variable of any of the simple types, as well as arrays of any of these values.

The Win32 API provides many functions for creating and manipulating VARIANTS in C/C++, and Microsoft Visual Basic provides native language support for this type. See the Microsoft Visual Studio documentation for definitions and API support for COM VARIANTS. VARIANT variables are self describing and store their type code as an internal field of the structure.

---

**Note** This discussion of data refers to both VARIANT and Variant data types. VARIANT is the C++ name and Variant is the corresponding data type in Visual Basic.

---

See VARIANT Type Codes Supported on page 15-10 for a list of the VARIANT type codes supported by the builder components.

See MATLAB® to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules on page 15-12 and COM VARIANT to MATLAB® Conversion Rules on page 15-17 for conversion rules between COM VARIANTS and MATLAB arrays.

### VARIANT Type Codes Supported

VARIANT Type Code (C/C++)	C/C++ Type	Variant Type Code (Visual Basic)	Visual Basic Type	Definition
VT_EMPTY	-	vbEmpty	-	Uninitialized VARIANT
VT_I1	char	-	-	Signed one-byte character
VT_UI1	unsigned char	vbByte	Byte	Unsigned one-byte character
VT_I2	short	vbInteger	Integer	Signed two-byte integer
VT_UI2	unsigned short	-	-	Unsigned two-byte integer
VT_I4	long	vbLong	Long	Signed four-byte integer

**VARIANT Type Codes Supported (Continued)**

<b>VARIANT Type Code (C/C++)</b>	<b>C/C++ Type</b>	<b>Variant Type Code (Visual Basic)</b>	<b>Visual Basic Type</b>	<b>Definition</b>
VT_UI4	unsigned long	-	-	Unsigned four-byte integer
VT_R4	float	vbSingle	Single	IEEE® four-byte floating-point value
VT_R8	double	vbDouble	Double	IEEE eight-byte floating-point value
VT_CY	CY <sup>+</sup>	vbCurrency	Currency	Currency value (64-bit integer, scaled by 10,000)
VT_BSTR	BSTR <sup>+</sup>	vbString	String	String value
VT_ERROR	SCODE <sup>+</sup>	vbError	-	HRESULT (signed four-byte integer representing a COM error code)
VT_DATE	DATE <sup>+</sup>	vbDate	Date	Eight-byte floating-point value representing date and time
VT_INT	int	-	-	Signed integer; equivalent to type int
VT_UINT	unsigned int	-	-	Unsigned integer; equivalent to type unsigned int
VT_DECIMAL	DECIMAL <sup>+</sup>	vbDecimal	-	96-bit (12-byte) unsigned integer, scaled by a variable power of 10

**VARIANT Type Codes Supported (Continued)**

<b>VARIANT Type Code (C/C++)</b>	<b>C/C++ Type</b>	<b>Variant Type Code (Visual Basic)</b>	<b>Visual Basic Type</b>	<b>Definition</b>
VT_BOOL	VARIANT_BOOL <sup>+</sup>	vbBoolean	Boolean	Two-byte Boolean value (0xFFFF = True; 0x0000 = False)
VT_DISPATCH	IDispatch*	vbObject	Object	IDispatch* pointer to an object
VT_VARIANT	VARIANT <sup>+</sup>	vbVariant	Variant	VARIANT (can only be specified if combined with VT_BYREF or VT_ARRAY)
<anything>   VT_ARRAY				Bitwise combine VT_ARRAY with any basic type to declare as an array
<anything>   VT_BYREF				Bitwise combine VT_BYREF with any basic type to declare as a reference to a value

<sup>+</sup> Denotes Windows specific type. Not part of standard C/C++.

**MATLAB to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules**

<b>MATLAB Data Type</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Scalar Data</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Array Data</b>	<b>Comments</b>
cell	A 1-by-1 cell array converts to a single VARIANT with a type conforming to the conversion rule for the MATLAB data type of the cell contents.	A multidimensional cell array converts to a VARIANT of type VT_VARIANT   VT_ARRAY with the type of each array member conforming to the	

**MATLAB to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>MATLAB Data Type</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Scalar Data</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Array Data</b>	<b>Comments</b>
		conversion rule for the MATLAB data type of the corresponding cell.	
structure	VT_DISPATCH	VT_DISPATCH	A MATLAB struct array is converted to an MWStruct object. (See “Class MWStruct” on page 16-16.) This object is passed as a VT_DISPATCH type.
char	A 1-by-1 char matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_BSTR with string length = 1.	A 1-by-L char matrix is assumed to represent a string of length Lin MATLAB. This case converts to a VARIANT of type VT_BSTR with a string length = L. char matrices of more than one row, or of a higher dimensionality convert to a VARIANT of type VT_BSTR VT_ARRAY. Each string in the converted array is of length 1 and corresponds to each character in the original matrix.	Arrays of strings are not supported as char matrices. To pass an array of strings, use a cell array of 1-by-L char matrices.

**MATLAB to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>MATLAB Data Type</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Scalar Data</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Array Data</b>	<b>Comments</b>
sparse	VT_DISPATCH	VT_DISPATCH	A MATLAB sparse array is converted to an MWSparse object. (See “Class MWSparse” on page 16-26.) This object is passed as a VT_DISPATCH type.
double	A real 1-by-1 double matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_R8. A complex 1-by-1 double matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional double matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_R8 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional double matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWComplex class. See “Class MWComplex” on page 16-24
single	A real 1-by-1 single matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_R4. A complex 1-by-1 single matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional single matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_R4 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional single matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWComplex class.

**MATLAB to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>MATLAB Data Type</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Scalar Data</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Array Data</b>	<b>Comments</b>
int8	A real 1-by-1 int8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I1. A complex 1-by-1 int8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional int8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I1 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional int8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.
uint8	A real 1-by-1 uint8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI1. A complex 1-by-1 uint8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional uint8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI1 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional uint8 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.
int16	A real 1-by-1 int16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I2. A complex 1-by-1 int16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional int16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I2 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional int16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.

**MATLAB to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>MATLAB Data Type</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Scalar Data</b>	<b>VARIANT Type for Array Data</b>	<b>Comments</b>
uint16	A real 1-by-1 uint16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI2. A complex 1-by-1 uint16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A real multidimensional uint16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI2 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional uint16 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.
int32	A 1-by-1 int32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I4. A complex 1-by-1 int32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A multidimensional int32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_I4 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional int32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.
uint32	A 1-by-1 uint32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI4. A complex 1-by-1 uint32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	A multidimensional uint32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_UI4 VT_ARRAY. A complex multidimensional uint32 matrix converts to a VARIANT of type VT_DISPATCH.	Complex arrays are passed to and from compiled MATLAB functions using the MWCComplex class.
Function handle	VT_EMPTY	VT_EMPTY	Not supported
Java class	VT_EMPTY	VT_EMPTY	Not supported
User class	VT_EMPTY	VT_EMPTY	Not supported
logical	VT_Boolean	VT_Boolean VT_ARRAY	



**COM VARIANT to MATLAB Conversion Rules**

<b>VARIANT Type</b>	<b>MATLAB Data Type (Scalar or Array Data)</b>	<b>Comments</b>
VT_EMPTY	N/A	Empty array created.
VT_I1	int8	
VT_UI1	uint8	
VT_I2	int16	
VT_UI2	uint16	
VT_I4	int32	
VT_UI4	uint32	
VT_R4	single	
VT_R8	double	
VT_CY	double	
VT_BSTR	char	A VARIANT of type VT_BSTR converts to a 1-by-L MATLAB char array, where L = the length of the string to be converted. A VARIANT of type VT_BSTR VT_ARRAY converts to a MATLAB cell array of 1-by-L char arrays.
VT_ERROR	int32	

**COM VARIANT to MATLAB Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>VARIANT Type</b>	<b>MATLAB Data Type (Scalar or Array Data)</b>	<b>Comments</b>
VT_DATE	double	<p>VARIANT dates are stored as doubles starting at midnight Dec. 31, 1899. MATLAB dates are stored as doubles starting at 0/0/00 00:00:00. Therefore, a VARIANT date of 0.0 maps to a MATLAB numeric date of 693960.0. VARIANT dates are converted to MATLAB double types and incremented by 693960.0.</p> <p>VARIANT dates can be optionally converted to strings. See “Data Conversion Flags” on page 15-21 for more information on type coercion.</p>
VT_INT	int32	
VT_UINT	uint32	
VT_DECIMAL	double	
VT_BOOL	logical	
VT_DISPATCH	<i>Varies</i>	<p>IDispatch* pointers are treated within the context of what they point to. Objects must be supported types with known data extraction and conversion rules, or expose a generic Value property that points to a single VARIANT type. Data extracted from an object is converted based on the rules for the particular VARIANT obtained.</p>

**COM VARIANT to MATLAB Conversion Rules (Continued)**

<b>VARIANT Type</b>	<b>MATLAB Data Type (Scalar or Array Data)</b>	<b>Comments</b>
		Currently, support exists for Excel Range objects as well as the builder types MWStruct, MWComplex, MWSparse, and MWArg. See “Utility Library Classes” on page 16-3 for information on the builder types to use with COM components.
<i>anything</i>  VT_BYREF	<i>Varies</i>	Pointers to any of the basic types are processed according to the rules for what they point to. The resulting MATLAB array contains a deep copy of the values.
<i>anything</i>  VT_ARRAY	<i>Varies</i>	Multidimensional VARIANT arrays convert to multidimensional MATLAB arrays, each element converted according to the rules for the basic types. Multidimensional VARIANT arrays of type VT_VARIANT VT_ARRAY convert to multidimensional cell arrays, each cell converted according to the rules for that specific type.

**Array Formatting Flags**

The builder components have flags that control how array data is formatted in both directions. Generally, you should develop client code that matches the intended inputs and outputs of the MATLAB functions with the corresponding methods on the compiled COM objects, in accordance with the rules listed in MATLAB® to COM VARIANT Conversion Rules on page 15-12 and COM

VARIANT to MATLAB® Conversion Rules on page 15-17. In some cases this is not possible, for example, when existing MATLAB code is used in conjunction with a third-party product like Excel.

The following table shows the array formatting flags.

**Array Formatting Flags**

Flag	Description
InputArrayFormat	<p>Defines the array formatting rule used on input arrays. An input array is a VARIANT array, created by the client, sent as an input parameter to a method call on a compiled COM object.</p> <p>Valid values for this flag are <code>mwArrayFormatAsIs</code>, <code>mwArrayFormatMatrix</code>, and <code>mwArrayFormatCell</code>.</p> <p><code>mwArrayFormatAsIs</code> passes the array unchanged.</p> <p><code>mwArrayFormatMatrix</code> (default) formats all arrays as matrices. When the input VARIANT is of type <code>VT_ARRAY   type</code>, where <code>type</code> is any numeric type, this flag has no effect. When the input VARIANT is of type <code>VT_VARIANT   VT_ARRAY</code>, VARIANTS in the array are examined. If they are single-valued and homogeneous in type, a MATLAB matrix of the appropriate type is produced instead of a cell array.</p> <p><code>mwArrayFormatCell</code> interprets all arrays as MATLAB cell arrays.</p>
InputArrayIndFlag	<p>Sets the input array indirection level used with the <code>InputArrayFormat</code> flag (applicable only to nested arrays, i.e., VARIANT arrays of VARIANTS, which themselves are arrays). The default value for this flag is zero, which applies the <code>InputArrayFormat</code> flag to the outermost array. When this flag is greater than zero, e.g., equal to <code>N</code>, the formatting rule attempts to apply itself to the <code>N</code>th level of nesting.</p>

## Array Formatting Flags (Continued)

Flag	Description
OutputArrayFormat	Defines the array formatting rule used on output arrays. An output array is a MATLAB array, created by the compiled COM object, sent as an output parameter from a method call to the client. The values for this flag, <code>mwArrayFormatAsIs</code> , <code>mwArrayFormatMatrix</code> , and <code>mwArrayFormatCell</code> , cause the same behavior as the corresponding <code>InputArrayFormat</code> flag values.
OutputArrayIndFlag	(Applies to nested cell arrays only.) Output array indirection level used with the <code>OutputArrayFormat</code> flag. This flag works exactly like <code>InputArrayIndFlag</code> .
AutoResizeOutput	(Applies to Excel ranges only.) When the target output from a method call is a range of cells in an Excel worksheet and the output array size and shape is not known at the time of the call, set this flag to <code>True</code> to resize each Excel range to fit the output array.
TransposeOutput	Set this flag to <code>True</code> to transpose the output arguments. Useful when calling a MATLAB Builder NE component from Excel where the MATLAB function returns outputs as row vectors, and you want the data in columns.

## Data Conversion Flags

MATLAB Builder NE components contain flags to control the conversion of certain VARIANT types to MATLAB types. These flags are as follows:

- “CoerceNumericToType” on page 15-22
- “InputDateFormat” on page 15-22
- “OutputAsDate As Boolean” on page 15-22
- “DateBias As Long” on page 15-22

### **CoerceNumericToType**

This flag tells the data converter to convert all numeric VARIANT data to one specific MATLAB type. VARIANT type codes affected by this flag are VT\_I1, VT\_UI1, VT\_I2, VT\_UI2, VT\_I4, VT\_UI4, VT\_R4, VT\_R8, VT\_CY, VT\_DECIMAL, VT\_INT, VT\_UINT, VT\_ERROR, VT\_BOOL, and VT\_DATE. Valid values for this flag are `mwTypeDefault`, `mwTypeChar`, `mwTypeDouble`, `mwTypeSingle`, `mwTypeLogical`, `mwTypeInt8`, `mwTypeUInt8`, `mwTypeInt16`, `mwTypeUInt16`, `mwTypeInt32`, and `mwTypeUInt32`.

The default for this flag, `mwTypeDefault`, converts numeric data according to the rules listed in “Data Conversion” on page 15-9.

### **InputDateFormat**

This flag tells the data converter how to convert VARIANT dates to MATLAB dates. Valid values for this flag are `mwDateFormatNumeric` (default) and `mwDateFormatString`. The default converts VARIANT dates according to the rule listed in VARIANT Type Codes Supported on page 15-10 . The `mwDateFormatString` flag converts a VARIANT date to its string representation. This flag only affects VARIANT type code VT\_DATE.

### **OutputAsDate As Boolean**

This flag instructs the data converter to process an output argument as a date. By default, numeric dates that are output parameters from compiled MATLAB functions are passed as `Doubles` that need to be decremented by the COM date bias (693960) as well as coerced to COM dates. Set this flag to `True` to convert all output values of type `Double`.

### **DateBias As Long**

This flag sets the date bias for performing COM to MATLAB numeric date conversions. The default value of this property is 693960, which represents the difference between the COM Date type and MATLAB numeric dates. This flag allows existing MATLAB code that already performs the increment of numeric dates by 693960 to be used unchanged with the builder components. To process dates with such code, set this property to 0.

## Calling Conventions

In this section...
“Producing a COM Class” on page 15-23
“IDL Mapping” on page 15-24
“Microsoft® Visual Basic Mapping” on page 15-25

### Producing a COM Class

Producing a COM class requires the generation of

- A class definition file in Interface Description Language (IDL)
- One or more associated C++ class definition/implementation files

The MATLAB Builder NE product automatically produces the necessary IDL and C/C++ code to build each COM class in the component. This process is generally transparent to you when you use the builder to generate a COM component, and to users of the COM component when they program with it.

For information about IDL and C++ coding rules for building COM objects and for mappings to other languages, see articles in the MSDN Library.

The following table shows the mapping of a generic MATLAB function to IDL code and to Microsoft Visual Basic.

Code	Sample
Generic MATLAB Code	<pre>function [Y1, Y2, ..., varargout] = foo(X1, X2, ..., varargin)</pre>
IDL Code	<pre>HRESULT foo([in] long nargout,             [in,out] VARIANT* Y1,             [in,out] VARIANT* Y2,             .             .             [in,out] VARIANT* varargout,             [in] VARIANT X1,             [in] VARIANT X2,             .             .             [in] VARIANT varargin);</pre>
Visual Basic Code	<pre>Sub foo(nargout As Long, _         Y1 As Variant, _         Y2 As Variant, _         .         .         varargout As Variant, _         X1 As Variant, _         X2 As Variant, _         .         .         varargin As Variant)</pre>

### IDL Mapping

The IDL function definition is generated by producing a function with the same name as the original MATLAB function and an argument list containing all inputs and outputs of the original plus one additional parameter, `nargout`.

When present, the `nargout` parameter is an `[in]` parameter of type `long`. It is always the first argument in the list. This parameter allows correct passage of the MATLAB `nargout` parameter to the compiled MATLAB code. The



`nargout` parameter is not produced if you encapsulate an MATLAB function containing no outputs.

Following the `nargout` parameter, the outputs are listed in the order they appear on the left side of the MATLAB function, and are tagged as `[in,out]`, meaning that they are passed in both directions.

The function inputs are listed next, appearing in the same order as they do on the right side of the original function. All inputs are tagged as `[in]` parameters.

When present, the optional `varargin`/`varargout` parameters are always listed as the last input parameters and the last output parameters. All parameters other than `nargout` are passed as COM VARIANT types. “Data Conversion” on page 15-9 lists the rules for conversion between MATLAB arrays and COM VARIANTS.

## **Microsoft Visual Basic Mapping**

Microsoft Visual Basic provides native support for COM Variants with the Variant type, as well as implicit conversions for all Visual Basic basic types to and from Variants. In general, arrays/scalars of any Visual Basic basic type, as well as arrays/scalars of Variant types, can be passed as arguments.

MATLAB Builder NE components also provide direct support for the Microsoft Excel Range object, used by Visual Basic for Applications to represent a range of cells in an Excel worksheet.

See the Visual Basic for Applications documentation included with Microsoft Excel for more information on Visual Basic data types.

See the MSDN Library for more information about Visual Basic and about Excel Range manipulation.



# Utility Library for Microsoft COM Components

---

- “Referencing Utility Classes” on page 16-2
- “Utility Library Classes” on page 16-3
- “Enumerations” on page 16-31

## Referencing Utility Classes

This section describes the `MWComUtil` library. This library is freely distributable and includes several functions used in array processing, as well as type definitions used in data conversion. This library is contained in the file `mwcomutil.dll`. It must be registered once on each machine that uses Microsoft COM components created by MATLAB Builder EX.

Register the `MWComUtil` library at the DOS command prompt with the command:

```
mwregsvr mwcomutil.dll
```

The `MWComUtil` library includes seven classes (see “Utility Library Classes” on page 16-3) and three enumerated types (see “Enumerations” on page 16-31). Before using these types, you must make explicit references to the `MWComUtil` type libraries in the Microsoft Visual Basic IDE. To do this select **Tools > References** from the main menu of the Visual Basic Editor. The References dialog box appears with a scrollable list of available type libraries. From this list, select **MWComUtil 1.0 Type Library** and click **OK**.

---

**Note** You must specify the full path of the component when calling `mwregsvr`, or make the call from the folder in which the component resides.

---

## Utility Library Classes

### In this section...

“Class MWUtil” on page 16-3  
“Class MWFlags” on page 16-10  
“Class MWStruct” on page 16-16  
“Class MWField” on page 16-23  
“Class MWComplex” on page 16-24  
“Class MWSparse” on page 16-26  
“Class MWArg” on page 16-29

### Class MWUtil

The MWUtil class contains a set of static utility methods used in array processing and application initialization. This class is implemented internally as a singleton (only one global instance of this class per instance of Microsoft Excel). It is most efficient to declare one variable of this type in global scope within each module that uses it. The methods of MWUtil are:

- “Sub MWInitApplication(pApp As Object)” on page 16-3
- “Sub MWPack(pVarArg, [Var0], [Var1], ... , [Var31])” on page 16-5
- “Sub MWUnpack(VarArg, [nStartAt As Long], [bAutoResize As Boolean = False], [pVar0], [pVar1], ..., [pVar31])” on page 16-7
- “Sub MWDate2VariantDate(pVar)” on page 16-9

The function prototypes use Visual Basic syntax.

### Sub MWInitApplication(pApp As Object)

Initializes the library with the current instance of Microsoft Excel.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
pApp	Object	A valid reference to the current Excel application

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** This function must be called once for each session of Excel that uses COM components created by MATLAB Builder for .NET. An error is generated if a method call is made to a member class of any MATLAB Builder for .NET COM component, and the library has not been initialized.

**Example.** This Visual Basic sample initializes the MWComUtil library with the current instance of Excel. A global variable of type Object named MCLUtil holds an instance of the MWUtil class, and another global variable of type Boolean named bModuleInitialized stores the status of the initialization process. The private subroutine InitModule() creates an instance of the MWComUtil class and calls the MWInitApplication method with an argument of Application. Once this function succeeds, all subsequent calls exit without recreating the object.

```

Dim MCLUtil As Object
Dim bModuleInitialized As Boolean

Private Sub InitModule()
    If Not bModuleInitialized Then
        On Error GoTo Handle_Error
        If MCLUtil Is Nothing Then
            Set MCLUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
        End If
        Call MCLUtil.MWInitApplication(Application)
        bModuleInitialized = True
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    bModuleInitialized = False
    End If
End Sub

```

---

**Note** If you are developing concurrently with multiple versions of MATLAB and MWComUtil.dll, for example, using this syntax:

```
Set MCLUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
```

requires you to recompile your COM modules every time you upgrade. To avoid this, make your call to the MWUtil module version-specific, for example:

```
Set MCLUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtilx.x")
```

where *x.x* is the specific version number.

---

### **Sub MWPack(pVarArg, [Var0], [Var1], ... ,[Var31])**

Packs a variable length list of Variant arguments into a single Variant array. This function is typically used for creating a varargin cell from a list of separate inputs. Each input in the list is added to the array only if it is nonempty and nonmissing. (In Visual Basic, a missing parameter is denoted by a Variant type of vbError with a value of &H80020004.)

#### **Parameters.**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
pVarArg	Variant	Receives the resulting array
[Var0], [Var1], ...	Variant	Optional list of Variants to pack into the array. From 0 to 32 arguments can be passed.

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** This function always frees the contents of pVarArg before processing the list.

**Example.** This example uses `MWPack` in a formula function to produce a `varargin` cell to pass as an input parameter to a method compiled from a MATLAB function with the signature

```
function y = mysum(varargin)
    y = sum([varargin{:}]);
```

The function returns the sum of the elements in `varargin`. Assume that this function is a method of a class named `myclass` that is included in a component named `mycomponent` with a version of 1.0. The Visual Basic function allows up to 10 inputs, and returns the result `y`. If an error occurs, the function returns the error string. This function assumes that `MWInitApplication` has been previously called.

```
Function mysum(Optional V0 As Variant, _
                Optional V1 As Variant, _
                Optional V2 As Variant, _
                Optional V3 As Variant, _
                Optional V4 As Variant, _
                Optional V5 As Variant, _
                Optional V6 As Variant, _
                Optional V7 As Variant, _
                Optional V8 As Variant, _
                Optional V9 As Variant) As Variant
    Dim y As Variant
    Dim varargin As Variant
    Dim aClass As Object
    Dim aUtil As Object

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    Set aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
    Set aUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
    Call aUtil.MWPack(varargin,V0,V1,V2,V3,V4,V5,V6,V7,V8,V9)
    Call aClass.mysum(1, y, varargin)
    mysum = y
    Exit Function
Handle_Error:
    mysum = Err.Description
End Function
```



### **Sub MWUnpack(VarArg, [nStartAt As Long], [bAutoSize As Boolean = False], [pVar0], [pVar1], ..., [pVar31])**

Unpacks an array of Variants into individual Variant arguments. This function provides the reverse functionality of MWPack and is typically used to process a varargout cell into individual Variants.

#### **Parameters.**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
VarArg	Variant	Input array of Variants to be processed
nStartAt	Long	Optional starting index (zero-based) in the array to begin processing. Default = 0.
bAutoSize	Boolean	Optional auto-resize flag. If this flag is True, any Excel range output arguments are resized to fit the dimensions of the Variant to be copied. The resizing process is applied relative to the upper left corner of the supplied range. Default = False.
[pVar0], [pVar1], ...	Variant	Optional list of Variants to receive the array items contained in VarArg. From 0 to 32 arguments can be passed.

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** This function can process a Variant array in one single call or through multiple calls using the `nStartAt` parameter.

**Example.** This example uses `MWUnpack` to process a `varargout` cell into several Excel ranges, while auto-resizing each range. The `varargout` parameter is supplied from a method that has been compiled from the MATLAB function.

```
function varargout = randvectors
    for i=1:nargout
        varargout{i} = rand(i,1);
    end
```

This function produces a sequence of `nargout` random column vectors, with the length of the *i*th vector equal to *i*. Assume that this function is included in a class named `myclass` that is included in a component named `mycomponent` with a version of 1.0. The Visual Basic subroutine takes no arguments and places the results into Excel columns starting at A1, B1, C1, and D1. If an error occurs, a message box displays the error text. This function assumes that `MWInitApplication` has been previously called.

```
Sub GenVectors()
    Dim aClass As Object
    Dim aUtil As Object
    Dim v As Variant
    Dim R1 As Range
    Dim R2 As Range
    Dim R3 As Range
    Dim R4 As Range

    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Set aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
    Set aUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
    Set R1 = Range("A1")
    Set R2 = Range("B1")
    Set R3 = Range("C1")
    Set R4 = Range("D1")
    Call aClass.randvectors(4, v)
    Call aUtil.MWUnpack(v,0,True,R1,R2,R3,R4)
    Exit Sub
```

```

Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

```

### Sub MWDate2VariantDate(pVar)

Converts output dates from MATLAB to Variant dates.

#### Parameters.

Argument	Type	Description
pVar	Variant	Variant to be converted

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** MATLAB handles dates as double-precision floating-point numbers with 0.0 representing 0/0/00 00:00:00. By default, numeric dates that are output parameters from compiled MATLAB functions are passed as Doubles that need to be decremented by the COM date bias as well as coerced to COM dates. The MWDate2VariantDate method performs this transformation and additionally converts dates in string form to COM date types.

**Example.** This example uses MWDate2VariantDate to process numeric dates returned from a method compiled from the following MATLAB function.

```

function x = getdates(n, inc)
    y = now;
    for i=1:n
        x(i,1) = y + (i-1)*inc;
    end

```

This function produces an n-length column vector of numeric values representing dates starting from the current date and time with each element incremented by inc days. Assume that this function is included in a class named myclass that is included in a component named mycomponent with a version of 1.0. The subroutine takes an Excel range and a Double as inputs and places the generated dates into the supplied range. If an error

occurs, a message box displays the error text. This function assumes that `MWInitApplication` has been previously called.

```
Sub GenDates(R As Range, inc As Double)
    Dim aClass As Object
    Dim aUtil As Object

    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Set aClass = CreateObject("mycomponent.myclass.1_0")
    Set aUtil = CreateObject("MWComUtil.MWUtil")
    Call aClass.getdates(1, R, R.Rows.Count, inc)
    Call aUtil.MWDate2VariantDate(R)
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub
```

## **Class MWFlags**

The `MWFlags` class contains a set of array formatting and data conversion flags (See “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4 for more information on conversion between MATLAB and COM Automation types.) All MATLAB Builder for .NET COM components contain a reference to an `MWFlags` object that can modify data conversion rules at the object level. This class contains these properties and method:

- “Property `ArrayFormatFlags As MWArrayFormatFlags`” on page 16-10
- “Property `DataConversionFlags As MWDataConversionFlags`” on page 16-13
- “Sub `Clone(ppFlags As MWFlags)`” on page 16-15

## **Property `ArrayFormatFlags As MWArrayFormatFlags`**

The `ArrayFormatFlags` property controls array formatting (as a matrix or a cell array) and the application of these rules to nested arrays. The `MWArrayFormatFlags` class is a noncreatable class accessed through an `MWFlags` class instance. This class contains six properties:

- “Property `InputArrayFormat As mwArrayFormat`” on page 16-11

- “Property InputArrayIndFlag As Long” on page 16-12
- “Property OutputArrayFormat As mwArrayFormat” on page 16-12
- “Property OutputArrayIndFlag As Long” on page 16-13
- “Property AutoResizeOutput As Boolean” on page 16-13
- “Property TransposeOutput As Boolean” on page 16-13

**Property InputArrayFormat As mwArrayFormat.** This property of type `mwArrayFormat` controls the formatting of arrays passed as input parameters to .NET Builder class methods. The default value is `mwArrayFormatMatrix`. The behaviors indicated by this flag are listed in the next table.

### Array Formatting Rules for Input Arrays

Value	Behavior
<code>mwArrayFormatAsIs</code>	Converts arrays according to the default conversion rules listed in “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4.
<code>mwArrayFormatCell</code>	Coerces all arrays into cell arrays. Input scalar or numeric array arguments are converted to cell arrays with each cell containing a scalar value for the respective index.
<code>mwArrayFormatMatrix</code>	Coerces all arrays into matrices. When an input argument is encountered that is an array of <code>Variants</code> (the default behavior is to convert it to a cell array), the data converter converts this array to a matrix if each <code>Variant</code> is single valued, and all elements are homogeneous and of a numeric type. If this conversion is not possible, creates a cell array.

**Property InputArrayIndFlag As Long.** This property governs the level at which to apply the rule set by the InputArrayFormat property for nested arrays (an array of Variants is passed and each element of the array is an array itself). It is not necessary to modify this flag for varargin parameters. The data conversion code automatically increments the value of this flag by 1 for varargin cells, thus applying the InputArrayFormat flag to each cell of a varargin parameter. The default value is 0.

**Property OutputArrayFormat As mxArrayFormat.** This property of type mxArrayFormat controls the formatting of arrays passed as output parameters to MATLAB Builder NE class methods. The default value is mxArrayFormatAsIs. The behaviors indicated by this flag are listed in the next table.

**Array Formatting Rules for Output Arrays**

Value	Behavior
mwArrayFormatAsIs	Converts arrays according to the default conversion rules listed in “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4.
mwArrayFormatMatrix	Coerces all arrays into matrices. When an output cell array argument is encountered (the default behavior converts it to an array of Variants), the data converter converts this array to a Variant that contains a simple numeric array if each cell is single valued, and all elements are homogeneous and of a numeric type. If this conversion is not possible, an array of Variants is created.
mwArrayFormatCell	Coerces all output arrays into arrays of Variants. Output scalar or numeric array arguments are converted to arrays of Variants, each Variant containing a scalar value for the respective index.

**Property OutputArrayIndFlag As Long.** This property is similar to the InputArrayIndFlag property, as it governs the level at which to apply the rule set by the OutputArrayFormat property for nested arrays. As with the input case, this flag is automatically incremented by 1 for a varargout parameter. The default value of this flag is 0.

**Property AutoResizeOutput As Boolean.** This flag applies to Excel ranges only. When the target output from a method call is a range of cells in an Excel worksheet, and the output array size and shape is not known at the time of the call, setting this flag to True instructs the data conversion code to resize each Excel range to fit the output array. Resizing is applied relative to the upper left corner of each supplied range. The default value for this flag is False.

**Property TransposeOutput As Boolean.** Setting this flag to True transposes the output arguments. This flag is useful when processing an output parameter from a method call on a COM component, where the MATLAB function returns outputs as row vectors, and you desire to place the data into columns. The default value for this flag is False.

### **Property DataConversionFlags As MWDataConversionFlags**

The DataConversionFlags property controls how input variables are processed when type coercion is needed. The MWDataConversionFlags class is a noncreatable class accessed through an MWFlags class instance. This class contains these properties:

- “Property CoerceNumericToType As mwDataType” on page 16-13
- “Property InputDateFormat As mwDateFormat” on page 16-14
- “PropertyOutputAsDate As Boolean” on page 16-14
- “PropertyDateBias As Long” on page 16-14

**Property CoerceNumericToType As mwDataType.** This property converts all numeric input arguments to one specific MATLAB type. This flag is useful is when variables maintained within the Visual Basic code are different types, e.g., Long, Integer, etc., and all variables passed to the compiled MATLAB code must be doubles. The default value for this property is mwTypeDefault, which uses the default rules in “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4.

**Property InputDateFormat As mwDateFormat.** This property converts dates passed as input parameters to method calls on .NET Builder classes. The default value is `mwDateFormatNumeric`. The behaviors indicated by this flag are shown in the following table.

### Conversion Rules for Input Dates

Value	Behavior
<code>mwDateFormatNumeric</code>	Convert dates to numeric values as indicated by the rule listed in “Data Conversion Rules” on page 10-4.
<code>mwDateFormatString</code>	Convert input dates to strings.

**Property OutputAsDate As Boolean.** This property processes an output argument as a date. By default, numeric dates that are output parameters from compiled MATLAB functions are passed as `Doubles` that need to be decremented by the COM date bias (693960) as well as coerced to COM dates. Set this flag to `True` to convert all output values of type `Double`.

**Property DateBias As Long.** This property sets the date bias for performing COM to MATLAB numeric date conversions. The default value of this property is 693960, representing the difference between the COM `Date` type and MATLAB numeric dates. This flag allows existing MATLAB code that already performs the increment of numeric dates by 693960 to be used unchanged with COM components created by MATLAB Builder NE. To process dates with such code, set this property to 0.

This example uses data conversion flags to reshape the output from a method compiled from a MATLAB function that produces an output vector of unknown length.

```
function p = myprimes(n)
if length(n)~=1, error('N must be a scalar'); end
if n < 2, p = zeros(1,0); return, end
p = 1:2:n;
q = length(p);
p(1) = 2;
for k = 3:2:sqrt(n)
    if p((k+1)/2)
```



```

        p(((k*k+1)/2):k:q) = 0;
    end
end
p = (p(p>0));

```

This function produces a row vector of all the prime numbers between 0 and n. Assume that this function is included in a class named `myclass` that is included in a component named `mycomponent` with a version of 1.0. The subroutine takes an Excel range and a Double as inputs, and places the generated prime numbers into the supplied range. The MATLAB function produces a row vector, although you want the output in column format. It also produces an unknown number of outputs, and you do not want to truncate any output. To handle these issues, set the `TransposeOutput` flag and the `AutoResizeOutput` flag to `True`. In previous examples, the Visual Basic `CreateObject` function creates the necessary classes. This example uses an explicit type declaration for the `aClass` variable. As with previous examples, this function assumes that `MWInitApplication` has been previously called.

```

Sub GenPrimes(R As Range, n As Double)
    Dim aClass As mycomponent.myclass

    On Error GoTo Handle_Error
    Set aClass = New mycomponent.myclass
    aClass.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.AutoResizeOutput = True
    aClass.MWFlags.ArrayFormatFlags.TransposeOutput = True
    Call aClass.myprimes(1, R, n)
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub

```

### **Sub Clone(ppFlags As MWFlags)**

Creates a copy of an `MWFlags` object.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
ppFlags	MWFlags	Reference to an uninitialized MWFlags object that receives the copy

**Return Value.** None

**Remarks.** Clone allocates a new MWFlags object and creates a deep copy of the object’s contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.

**Class MWStruct**

The MWStruct class passes or receives a Struct type to or from a compiled class method. This class contains seven properties/methods:

- “Sub Initialize([varDims], [varFieldNames])” on page 16-16
- “Property Item([i0], [i1], ..., [i31]) As MWField” on page 16-18
- “Property NumberOfFields As Long” on page 16-21
- “Property NumberOfDims As Long” on page 16-21
- “Property Dims As Variant” on page 16-21
- “Property FieldNames As Variant” on page 16-21
- “Sub Clone(ppStruct As MWStruct)” on page 16-22

**Sub Initialize([varDims], [varFieldNames])**

This method allocates a structure array with a specified number and size of dimensions and a specified list of field names.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
varDims	Variant	Optional array of dimensions
varFieldNames	Variant	Optional array of field names

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** When created, an MWStruct object has a dimensionality of 1-by-1 and no fields. The `Initialize` method dimensions the array and adds a set of named fields to each element. Each time you call `Initialize` on the same object, it is redimensioned. If you do not supply the `varDims` argument, the existing number and size of the array's dimensions unchanged. If you do not supply the `varFieldNames` argument, the existing list of fields is not changed. Calling `Initialize` with no arguments leaves the array unchanged.

**Example.** The following Visual Basic code illustrates use of the `Initialize` method to dimension struct arrays.

```

Sub foo ()
    Dim x As MWStruct
    Dim y As MWStruct

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    'Create 1X1 struct arrays with no fields for x, and y
    Set x = new MWStruct
    Set y = new MWStruct

    'Initialize x to be 2X2 with fields "red", "green",
    '                                     and "blue"
    Call x.Initialize(Array(2,2), Array("red", "green", "blue"))
    'Initialize y to be 1X5 with fields "name" and "age"
    Call y.Initialize(5, Array("name", "age"))

    'Re-dimension x to be 3X3 with the same field names
    Call x.Initialize(Array(3,3))

```

```

        'Add a new field to y
        Call y.Initialize(, Array("name", "age", "salary"))

        Exit Sub
    Handle_Error:
        MsgBox(Err.Description)
    End Sub

```

**Property Item([i0], [i1], ..., [i31]) As MWField**

The Item property is the default property of the MWStruct class. This property is used to set/get the value of a field at a particular index in the structure array.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
i0,i1, ..., i31	Variant	Optional index arguments. Between 0 and 32 index arguments can be entered. To reference an element of the array, specify all indexes as well as the field name.

**Remarks.** When accessing a named field through this property, you must supply all dimensions of the requested field as well as the field name. This property always returns a single field value, and generates a bad index error if you provide an invalid or incomplete index list. Index arguments have four basic formats:

- Field name only

This format may be used only in the case of a 1-by-1 structure array and returns the named field's value. For example:

```

x("red") = 0.2
x("green") = 0.4

```

```
x("blue") = 0.6
```

In this example, the name of the `Item` property was neglected. This is possible since the `Item` property is the default property of the `MWStruct` class. In this case the two statements are equivalent:

```
x.Item("red") = 0.2
x("red") = 0.2
```

- Single index and field name

This format accesses array elements through a single subscripting notation. A single numeric index `n` followed by the field name returns the named field on the `n`th array element, navigating the array linearly in column-major order. For example, consider a 2-by-2 array of structures with fields "red", "green", and "blue" stored in a variable `x`. These two statements are equivalent:

```
y = x(2, "red")
y = x(2, 1, "red")
```

- All indices and field name

This format accesses an array element of an multidimensional array by specifying `n` indices. These statements access all four of the elements of the array in the previous example:

```
For I From 1 To 2
  For J From 1 To 2
    r(I, J) = x(I, J, "red")
    g(I, J) = x(I, J, "green")
    b(I, J) = x(I, J, "blue")
  Next
Next
```

- Array of indices and field name

This format accesses an array element by passing an array of indices and a field name. The next example rewrites the previous example using an index array:

```
Dim Index(1 To 2) As Integer
```

```
For I From 1 To 2
  Index(1) = I
  For J From 1 To 2
    Index(2) = J
    r(I, J) = x(Index, "red")
    g(I, J) = x(Index, "green")
    b(I, J) = x(Index, "blue")
  Next
Next
```

With these four formats, the `Item` property provides a very flexible indexing mechanism for structure arrays. Also note:

- You can combine the last two indexing formats. Several index arguments supplied in either scalar or array format are concatenated to form one index set. The combining stops when the number of dimensions has been reached. For example:

```
Dim Index1(1 To 2) As Integer
Dim Index2(1 To 2) As Integer

Index1(1) = 1
Index1(2) = 1
Index2(1) = 3
Index2(2) = 2
x(Index1, Index2, 2, "red") = 0.5
```

The last statement resolves to

```
x(1, 1, 3, 2, 2, "red") = 0.5
```

- The field name must be the last index in the list. The following statement produces an error:

```
y = x("blue", 1, 2)
```

- Field names are case sensitive.

### Property NumberOfFields As Long

The read-only `NumberOfFields` property returns the number of fields in the structure array.

### Property NumberOfDims As Long

The read-only `NumberOfDims` property returns the number of dimensions in the struct array.

### Property Dims As Variant

The read-only `Dims` property returns an array of length `NumberOfDims` that contains the size of each dimension of the struct array.

### Property FieldNames As Variant

The read-only `FieldNames` property returns an array of length `NumberOfFields` that contains the field names of the elements of the structure array.

**Example.** The next Visual Basic code sample illustrates how to access a two-dimensional structure array's fields when the field names and dimension sizes are not known in advance.

```
Sub foo ()
    Dim x As MWStruct
    Dim Dims as Variant
    Dim FieldNames As Variant

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    '
    '... Call a method that returns an MWStruct in x
    '

    Dims = x.Dims
    FieldNames = x.FieldNames
    For I From 1 To Dims(1)
        For J From 1 To Dims(2)
            For K From 1 To x.NumberOfFields
                y = x(I,J,FieldNames(K))
                ' ... Do something with y
            
```

```

                Next
            Next
        Next
    Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
    MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub

```

### Sub Clone(ppStruct As MWStruct)

Creates a copy of an MWStruct object.

#### Parameters.

Argument	Type	Description
ppStruct	MWStruct	Reference to an uninitialized MWStruct object to receive the copy

**Return Value.** None

**Remarks.** Clone allocates a new MWStruct object and creates a deep copy of the object's contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.

**Example.** The following Visual Basic example illustrates the difference between assignment and Clone for MWStruct objects.

```

Sub foo ()
    Dim x1 As MWStruct
    Dim x2 As MWStruct
    Dim x3 As MWStruct

    On Error Goto Handle_Error
    Set x1 = new MWStruct
    x1("name") = "John Smith"
    x1("age") = 35

```



```

'Set reference of x1 to x2
Set x2 = x1
'Create new object for x3 and copy contents of x1 into it
Call x1.Clone(x3)
'x2's "age" field is
'also modified 'x3's "age" field unchanged
x1("age") = 50
.
.
.
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub

```

## Class MWField

The MWField class holds a single field reference in an MWStruct object. This class is noncreatable and contains four properties/methods:

- “Property Name As String” on page 16-23
- “Property Value As Variant” on page 16-23
- “Property MWFlags As MWFlags” on page 16-23
- “Sub Clone(ppField As MWField)” on page 16-24

### Property Name As String

The name of the field (read only).

### Property Value As Variant

Stores the field’s value (read/write). The Value property is the default property of the MWField class. The value of a field can be any type that is coercible to a Variant, as well as object types.

### Property MWFlags As MWFlags

Stores a reference to an MWFlags object. This property sets or gets the array formatting and data conversion flags for a particular field. Each field in a

structure has its own `MWFlags` property. This property overrides the value of any flags set on the object whose methods are called.

**Sub Clone(ppField As MWField)**

Creates a copy of an `MWField` object.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
ppField	MWField	Reference to an uninitialized <code>MWField</code> object to receive the copy

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** `Clone` allocates a new `MWField` object and creates a deep copy of the object’s contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.

**Class MWComplex**

The `MWComplex` class passes or receives a complex numeric array into or from a compiled class method. This class contains four properties/methods:

- “Property Real As Variant” on page 16-24
- “Property Imag As Variant” on page 16-25
- “Property MWFlags As MWFlags” on page 16-26
- “Sub Clone(ppComplex As MWComplex)” on page 16-26

**Property Real As Variant**

Stores the real part of a complex array (read/write). The `Real` property is the default property of the `MWComplex` class. The value of this property can be any type coercible to a `Variant`, as well as object types, with the restriction that the underlying array must resolve to a numeric matrix (no cell data allowed).

Valid Visual Basic numeric types for complex arrays include Byte, Integer, Long, Single, Double, Currency, and Variant/vbDecimal.

### Property Imag As Variant

Stores the imaginary part of a complex array (read/write). The Imag property is optional and can be Empty for a pure real array. If the Imag property is nonempty and the size and type of the underlying array do not match the size and type of the Real property's array, an error results when the object is used in a method call.

**Example.** The following Visual Basic code creates a complex array with the following entries:

```
x = [ 1+i 1+2i
      2+i 2+2i ]
Sub foo()
  Dim x As MWComplex
  Dim rval(1 To 2, 1 To 2) As Double
  Dim ival(1 To 2, 1 To 2) As Double

  On Error Goto Handle_Error
  For I = 1 To 2
    For J = 1 To 2
      rval(I,J) = I
      ival(I,J) = J
    Next
  Next
  Set x = new MWComplex
  x.Real = rval
  x.Imag = ival
  .
  .
  .
  Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
  MsgBox(Err.Description)
End Sub
```

**Property MWFlags As MWFlags**

Stores a reference to an MWFlags object. This property sets or gets the array formatting and data conversion flags for a particular complex array. Each MWComplex object has its own MWFlags property. This property overrides the value of any flags set on the object whose methods are called.

**Sub Clone(ppComplex As MWComplex)**

Creates a copy of an MWComplex object.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
ppComplex	MWComplex	Reference to an uninitialized MWComplex object to receive the copy

**Return Value.** None

**Remarks.** Clone allocates a new MWComplex object and creates a deep copy of the object’s contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.

**Class MWSpase**

The MWSpase class passes or receives a two-dimensional sparse numeric array into or from a compiled class method. This class has seven properties/methods:

- “Property NumRows As Long” on page 16-27
- “Property NumColumns As Long” on page 16-27
- “PropertyRowIndex As Variant” on page 16-27
- “Property ColumnIndex As Variant” on page 16-27
- “Property Array As Variant” on page 16-27
- “Property MWFlags As MWFlags” on page 16-28
- “Sub Clone(ppSpase As MWSpase)” on page 16-28

**Property NumRows As Long**

Stores the row dimension for the array. The value of NumRows must be nonnegative. If the value is zero, the row index is taken from the maximum of the values in the RowIndex array.

**Property NumColumns As Long**

Stores the column dimension for the array. The value of NumColumns must be nonnegative. If the value is zero, the row index is taken from the maximum of the values in the ColumnIndex array.

**Property RowIndex As Variant**

Stores the array of row indices of the nonzero elements of the array. The value of this property can be any type coercible to a Variant, as well as object types, with the restriction that the underlying array must resolve to or be coercible to a numeric matrix of type Long. If the value of NumRows is nonzero and any row index is greater than NumRows, a bad-index error occurs. An error also results if the number of elements in the RowIndex array does not match the number of elements in the Array property's underlying array.

**Property ColumnIndex As Variant**

Stores the array of column indices of the nonzero elements of the array. The value of this property can be any type coercible to a Variant, as well as object types, with the restriction that the underlying array must resolve to or be coercible to a numeric matrix of type Long. If the value of NumColumns is nonzero and any column index is greater than NumColumns, a bad-index error occurs. An error also results if the number of elements in the ColumnIndex array does not match the number of elements in the Array property's underlying array.

**Property Array As Variant**

Stores the nonzero array values of the sparse array. The value of this property can be any type coercible to a Variant, as well as object types, with the restriction that the underlying array must resolve to or be coercible to a numeric matrix of type Double or Boolean.

**Property MWFlags As MWFlags**

Stores a reference to an MWFlags object. This property sets or gets the array formatting and data conversion flags for a particular sparse array. Each MWSparse object has its own MWFlags property. This property overrides the value of any flags set on the object whose methods are called.

**Sub Clone(ppSparse As MWSparse)**

Creates a copy of an MWSparse object.

**Parameters.**

Argument	Type	Description
ppSparse	MWSparse	Reference to an uninitialized MWSparse object to receive the copy

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** Clone allocates a new MWSparse object and creates a deep copy of the object's contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.

**Example.** The following Visual Basic sample creates a 5-by-5 tridiagonal sparse array with the following entries:

```
X = [ 2 -1 0 0 0
      -1 2 -1 0 0
        0 -1 2 -1 0
        0 0 -1 2 -1
        0 0 0 -1 2 ]
```

```
Sub foo()
  Dim x As MWSparse
  Dim rows(1 To 13) As Long
  Dim cols(1 To 13) As Long
  Dim vals(1 To 13) As Double
```

```
Dim I As Long, K As Long

On Error GoTo Handle_Error
K = 1
For I = 1 To 4
    rows(K) = I
    cols(K) = I + 1
    vals(K) = -1
    K = K + 1
    rows(K) = I
    cols(K) = I
    vals(K) = 2
    K = K + 1
    rows(K) = I + 1
    cols(K) = I
    vals(K) = -1
    K = K + 1
Next
rows(K) = 5
cols(K) = 5
vals(K) = 2
Set x = New MWsparse
x.NumRows = 5
x.NumColumns = 5
x.RowIndex = rows
x.ColumnIndex = cols
x.Array = vals
    :
    :
    :
Exit Sub
Handle_Error:
MsgBox (Err.Description)
End Sub
```

## **Class MWArg**

The MWArg class passes a generic argument into a compiled class method. This class passes an argument for which the data conversion flags are changed for that one argument. This class has three properties/methods:

- “Property Value As Variant” on page 16-30
- “Property MWFlags As MWFlags” on page 16-30
- “Sub Clone(ppArg As MWArg)” on page 16-30

### **Property Value As Variant**

The Value property stores the actual argument to pass. Any type that can be passed to a compiled method is valid for this property.

### **Property MWFlags As MWFlags**

Stores a reference to an MWFlags object. This property sets or gets the array formatting and data conversion flags for a particular argument. Each MWArg object has its own MWFlags property. This property overrides the value of any flags set on the object whose methods are called.

### **Sub Clone(ppArg As MWArg)**

Creates a copy of an MWArg object.

#### **Parameters.**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
ppArg	MWArg	Reference to an uninitialized MWArg object to receive the copy

**Return Value.** None.

**Remarks.** Clone allocates a new MWArg object and creates a deep copy of the object’s contents. Call this function when a separate object is required instead of a shared copy of an existing object reference.



## Enumerations

In this section...
“Enum mwArrayFormat” on page 16-31
“Enum mwDataType” on page 16-31
“Enum mwDateFormat” on page 16-32

### Enum mwArrayFormat

The `mwArrayFormat` enumeration is a set of constants that denote an array formatting rule for data conversion.

#### mwArrayFormat Values

Constant	Numeric Value	Description
<code>mwArrayFormatAsIs</code>	0	Do not reformat the array.
<code>mwArrayFormatMatrix</code>	1	Format the array as a matrix.
<code>mwArrayFormatCell</code>	2	Format the array as a cell array.

### Enum mwDataType

The `mwDataType` enumeration is a set of constants that denote a MATLAB numeric type.

#### mwDataType Values

Constant	Numeric Value	MATLAB Type
<code>mwTypeDefault</code>	0	Not applicable
<code>mwTypeLogical</code>	3	logical
<code>mwTypeChar</code>	4	char
<code>mwTypeDouble</code>	6	double

### **mwDataType Values (Continued)**

<b>Constant</b>	<b>Numeric Value</b>	<b>MATLAB Type</b>
mwTypeSingle	7	single
mwTypeInt8	8	int8
mwTypeUInt8	9	uint8
mwTypeInt16	10	int16
mwTypeUInt16	11	uint16
mwTypeInt32	12	int32
mwTypeUInt32	13	uint32

### **Enum mwDateFormat**

The `mwDateFormat` enumeration is a set of constants that denote a formatting rule for dates.

#### **mwDateFormat Values**

<b>Constant</b>	<b>Numeric Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
mwDateFormatNumeric	0	Format dates as numeric values
mwDateFormatString	1	Format dates as strings

# Examples

---

Use this list to find examples in the documentation.

## **Magic Square Example for .NET**

“Deploying a Component Using the Magic Square Example” on page 1-9

## **Using Load and Save**

“Using Load/Save Functions to Process MATLAB Data for Deployed Applications” on page 2-14

## **Using the MCR Data Interface**

“Improving Data Access Using the MCR User Data Interface and MATLAB® Builder NE” on page 3-6

## **Passing MCR Option Values from a C# Application**

“Example: Passing MCR Option Values from a C# Application” on page 3-12

## **Using WaitForFiguresToDie to Block Execution**

“Code Fragment: Using WaitForFiguresToDie to Block Execution” on page 3-18

## **Using functions engOpen and engEvalString from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program**

“Example: Using functions engOpen and engEvalString from the MATLAB Engine API in a C# Program” on page 3-20

## **Sample Applications (C#)**

- “Simple Plot Example” on page 4-2
- “Passing Variable Arguments” on page 4-7
- “Spectral Analysis Example” on page 4-13
- “Matrix Math Example” on page 4-20
- “Phonebook Example” on page 4-28

## **Sample Applications (Visual Basic .NET)**

- “Magic Square Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-3
- “Create Plot Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-7
- “Variable Arguments Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-11
- “Spectral Analysis Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-15
- “Matrix Math Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-20
- “Phonebook Example (Visual Basic)” on page 5-25

## **Quick Start to Implementing a WebFigure**

- “Quick Start: Implementing a WebFigure” on page 6-7

## **Working with Functions that Return a Single WebFigure as the Function’s Only Output**

- “Working with Functions that Return a Single WebFigure as the Function’s Only Output” on page 6-19

## **Working With Functions That Return Multiple WebFigures In an Array as the Output**

“Working With Functions That Return Multiple WebFigures In an Array as the Output” on page 6-20

## **Attaching a WebFigure**

“Attaching a WebFigure” on page 6-21

## **Referencing a WebFigure Attached to the Local Server**

“Referencing a WebFigure Attached to the Local Server” on page 6-26

## **Referencing a WebFigure Attached to a Remote Server**

“Referencing a WebFigure Attached to a Remote Server” on page 6-27

## **Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up**

“Using Global Application Class (Global.asax) to Create WebFigures at Server Start-Up” on page 6-28

## **Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure**

“Creating and Modifying a MATLAB Figure” on page 7-3

## **Working with MATLAB Figures**

“Working with Figures” on page 7-6

## **Working with Images**

“Working with Images” on page 7-6

## **Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool**

“Building a Remotable Component Using the Deployment Tool” on page 8-7

## **Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command**

“Building a Remotable Component Using the mcc Command” on page 8-10

## **Using Native .NET Structure and Cell Arrays**

“Coding and Building the Client Application and Configuration File with the Native MWArray, MWStructArray, and MWCellArray Classes ” on page 8-34

## **COM Components**

“Building a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-2

“Packaging a Deployable COM Component” on page 12-4

“Calling a COM Object in a Visual C++ Program” on page 13-11

“Creating and Using a varargin Array in Microsoft® Visual Basic Programs” on page 13-26

“Creating and Using varargout in Microsoft® Visual Basic Programs” on page 13-27

“Using Array Formatting Flags” on page 13-30

“Using Data Conversion Flags” on page 13-33

“Blocking Execution of a Console Application that Creates Figures” on page 13-39

“Magic Square Example” on page 14-2

“Creating an Excel Add-In: Spectral Analysis Example” on page 14-9

“Univariate Interpolation Example” on page 14-24

“Matrix Calculator Example” on page 14-32

“Curve Fitting Example” on page 14-43

“Bouncing Ball Simulation Example” on page 14-51

## **Utility Library Classes for COM Components**

Chapter 16, “Utility Library for Microsoft COM Components”



**assembly**

Logical collection of one or more managed EXE or DLL files containing a .NET application's code and resources.

**CLS**

See Common Language Specification.

**common language runtime (CLR)**

Run-time environment provided by the .NET Framework, which runs the code and provides services that make the development process easier.

**Common Language Specification (CLS)**

A subset of language features supported by the **.NET common language runtime (CLR)**. CLS includes features common to several object-oriented programming languages, such as C#, VB.NET, and C++ with managed extensions. CLS-compliant components and tools are guaranteed to interoperate with other CLS-compliant components and tools.

**component installer**

The self-extracting executable created by the builder packaging process, which is used to deploy components created by the builder.

**.ctf files**

Component Technology Files, which are the encrypted MATLAB functions compiled by the builder. CTF archive files are embedded in the component generated by the builder as of R2008b.

**data conversion classes**

Provided by the builder to marshal data between MATLAB and other languages.

**feval API**

Interface generated by the builder for a MATLAB function. Includes both input and output arguments in the argument list. Output arguments are specified first, followed by the input arguments.

**finalization**

Semiautomatic mechanism provided by the .NET Framework to help clean up **native resources** just before garbage collection of a managed object.

**managed**

Code written in a programming language that uses the Microsoft .NET Framework. The languages share a unified set of class libraries and can be encoded into an Intermediate Language (IL). A CLR runtime-aware compiler compiles the IL into native executable code within a managed execution environment that ensures type safety, array bound and index checking, exception handling, and garbage collection.

**marshal**

To gather data from one or more applications and convert it to a format that is prescribed for a particular receiver or programming interface.

**MATLAB Compiler Runtime (MCR)**

Part of the MATLAB Builder NE product. Required to run MATLAB applications on machines that do not have the MATLAB desktop installed.

**mxArray**

The MATLAB language works with only a single object type: the MATLAB array. All MATLAB variables, including scalars, vectors, matrices, strings, cell arrays, structures, and objects are stored as MATLAB arrays. In C, the MATLAB array is declared to be of type mxArray. The mxArray structure contains, among other things: its type, its dimensions, the data associated with this array, the number of fields and field names (if a structure or object).

**native code resources**

Resources that exist outside the control of the **CLR**.

**.NET Framework**

.NET is a software architecture developed by Microsoft to build component-based applications. .NET components expose interfaces that allow other managed applications and components to access their properties, methods, and events.

**Pascal case**

A convention for capitalizing identifier names. The first letter in the identifier and the first letter of each subsequent concatenated word is capitalized. For example: MakeSquare.

**project**

A feature of the MATLAB Builder NE product accessed via the Deployment Tool, which appears when you issue the `deploytool` command. A project specifies components and classes to be created and the functions to be associated with them.

**reflection**

Programming technique supported by **CLR**. Used to dynamically create an instance of a type, bind the type to an existing object, or get the type from an existing object, and then invoke the type's methods or access its fields and properties.

**single output API**

Interface generated by MATLAB Builder NE when only a single output is required. Returns result as a single `MWArray` rather than an array of `MWArrays`.

**standard API**

Interface generated by MATLAB Builder NE. Specifies inputs within the argument list and outputs as an array of `MWArray` return values.



## A

- access 13-2
- Accessibility
  - DLLs to add to path enabling 10-3
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
  - cryptosystem 2-7
- Array Formatting
  - About 1-3
- array formatting flags 13-29
- Assistive technologies
  - DLLs to add to path enabling 10-3

## B

- build process 2-4

## C

- capabilities 15-2
- Class MWFlags 16-10
- Class MWUtil 16-3
- class name 1-28
- class properties
  - properties, class 13-36
- COM
  - defined 1-4
- COM class
  - producing 15-23
- COM component
  - as Excel add-in 14-9
  - registration 15-4
  - utility classes 16-1
  - VB examples of creating and using 14-1
- COM Components
  - About 1-3
- COM VARIANT 15-9
- command line
  - differences between command-line and GUI 2-4
- command line interface 12-6

- Command Line Interface 1-17
  - Using .NET Bundles to Simply 1-19
- Common Language Specification 1-2
- compiler
  - errors 10-2
- Compiler
  - security 2-7
- compilers
  - supported 10-2
- component
  - access 13-2
- component indexing 3-14
- Component Object Model (COM)
  - defined 1-4
- Component Technology File (CTF) 2-7
- componentinfo function 11-2
- Converting real or imaginary components
  - MATLAB arrays and vectors
    - ToArray 3-15
- create phonebook example 4-28 5-25
- CreateObject function 13-5
- CTF (Component Technology File) archive 2-7
- CTF Archive
  - Controlling management and storage
    - of. 3-24
- CTF file 2-7

## D

- data conversion
  - classes for .NET components 10-7
  - rules for .NET components 10-4
  - rules for COM components 15-9
  - utility classes for COM components 16-1
- Data Conversion 1-29
  - About 1-3
  - Advantage to Using Conversion Classes 1-30
- data conversion flags 13-29
- Data Structure Arrays
  - Adding Fields 1-32

**Data Structures**

Adding Fields 1-32

**Data Types**

Casting in MATLAB® Builder NE 1-31

Dependency Analysis Function 2-4 to 2-5

depfun 2-4 to 2-5

**Deployment Tool**differences between command-line and  
GUI 2-4

Starting from the command line 1-18 11-6

**deploytool**differences between command-line and  
GUI 2-4

diagnostics 9-4

dispose 3-5

**DLLs 2-6**

depfun 2-6

utility classes for COM components 16-1

**E****Enumeration**

mwArrayFormat 16-31

mwDataType 16-31

mwDateFormat 16-32

enumerations 16-31

error handling 3-22

**Error Handling**

About 1-3

errors 9-4

COM components 9-4

compiler 10-2

examples 4-28 5-25

C# 4-1

C# create plot 4-2

Excel add-in 14-9

magic square 14-2

Excel add-in 14-9

exceptions 3-22

**F****Figures**Keeping open by blocking execution of  
console application 3-17**flags**

array formatting 13-29

data conversion 13-29

**G**

Global Application Class (Global.asax) 6-28

global variables 13-36

Global.asax 6-28

Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) 15-5

GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) 15-5

**I**

IDL mapping 15-23

**Indexing**

About 1-3

**L**

limitations 10-3

Limitations 1-4

Load function 2-14

**M**

magic square example 14-2

managed classes 1-28

MAT files 2-14

MATLAB Array indexing

About 1-32

MATLAB Builder NE

introduction 1-2

system requirements 10-2

MATLAB® Builder™ NE

example of deploying 1-9

MATLAB Compiler 10-2

- build process 2-4
- MATLAB Data Conversion
  - Classes 1-30
- MATLAB data files 2-14
- MATLAB Data Types
  - Automatic Casting in MATLAB® Builder NE 1-31
  - Casting in MATLAB® Builder NE 1-31
- MATLAB file
  - encrypting 2-7
- MATLAB Function Signatures
  - About 1-12
- MATLAB objects
  - no support for 1-4
- MATLAB® Builder NE
  - Building a Component 1-12
  - Component and Class Naming
    - Conventions 1-29
  - Implementing Component On Another Computer 1-32
  - Packaging a Component 1-16
  - Using Classes and Methods with 1-28
  - Using Component in .NET Application
    - Coding 1-25
    - Versioning 1-29
- matrix math example
  - C# 4-20
- mcc
  - differences between command-line and GUI 2-4
- MCOS Objects
  - no support for 1-4
- MCR 1-24
  - Deploying Components With 1-24
  - Sharing Among Classes 1-17
  - singleton 1-17
- MCR Component Cache
  - How to use
    - Overriding CTF embedding 3-24
- messages 9-4

- compiler 10-2
- methods
  - error handling 3-22
- MEX-files 2-4 to 2-6
  - depfun 2-6
- missing parameter 16-5
- multiple classes 4-13
- MWArray class library 10-7
- MWComponentOptions 3-24
- MWFlags class 16-10
- mwregsvr utility 15-4
- MWUtil class 16-3

## N

- Native .NET API
  - Cell Arrays, Structs 8-26
  - Data Structures 8-26
- native resources
  - dispose 3-5
- .NET common language runtime (CLR)* 1-2
- .NET component
  - C# examples of creating and using 4-1
  - installing 3-2
  - instantiating classes 3-4
  - specifying 3-3
  - VB examples of creating and using 5-1
- .NET components
  - overview of creating 1-9
- New operator 13-6

## P

- Packaging
  - About 1-16
- problems 9-4

## R

- Remotable components 8-2
- Remotable Components

- About 1-3
- Renderers
  - in WebFigures 6-2
- requirements
  - system 10-2
- restrictions 10-3

## **S**

- Save function 2-14
- security 2-7
- self-registering component 15-4
- shared libraries 2-6
  - depfun 2-6
- shared library 2-6
- Structs StructArrays
  - Adding fields 1-32
- system requirements 10-2

## **T**

- troubleshooting 9-4
  - compiler errors 10-2
- type library 15-4

## **U**

- unregistering components 15-4
- utility library 16-3

## **V**

- VARIANT variable 15-9
- version number
  - components 15-7
- Versioning 1-29
- versioning rules 15-7
- Visual Basic mapping 15-25

## **W**

- WaitForFiguresToDie 3-17
- Web Figure
  - WebFigure 6-2
- WebFigures
  - Getting image data from a WebFigure 7-8
  - Supported renderers 6-2